Grace B. Green
1355 Brooke St.

CV Sterling — 13

Grace Barrington Green

AN

OLD ENGLISH

GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK

WITH

INFLECTIONS, SYNTAX, SELECTIONS FOR READING, AND GLOSSARY

BY

C. ALPHONSO SMITH, A.M., PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA

NEW EDITION

REVISED AND ENLARGED

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

Copyright, 1896, by
C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE scope of this book is indicated in § 5. It is intended for beginners, and in writing it, these words of Sir Thomas Elyot have not been forgotten: "Grammer, beinge but an introduction to the understandinge of autors, if it be made to longe or exquisite to the lerner, it in a maner mortifieth his corage: And by that time he cometh to the most swete and pleasant redinge of olde autors, the sparkes of fervent desire of lernynge are extincte with the burdone of grammer, lyke as a lyttell fyre is sone quenched with a great heape of small stickes." — *The Governour*, Cap. X.

Only the essentials, therefore, are treated in this work, which is planned more as a foundation for the study of Modern English grammar, of historical English grammar, and of the principles of English etymology, than as a general introduction to Germanic philology.

The Exercises in translation will, it is believed, furnish all the drill necessary to enable the student to retain the forms and constructions given in the various chapters.

The Selections for Reading relate to the history and literature of King Alfred's day, and are sufficient to give the student a first-hand, though brief, acquaintance with the native style and idiom of Early West Saxon prose in its golden age. Most of the words and constructions contained in them will be already familiar to the student through their intentional employment in the Exercises.

For the inflectional portion of this grammar, recourse

has been had chiefly to Sievers' *Abriss der angelsächsischen Grammatik* (1895). Constant reference has been made also to the same author's earlier and larger *Angelsächsische Grammatik*, translated by Cook. A more sparing use has been made of Cosijn's *Altwestsächsische Grammatik.*

For syntax and illustrative sentences, Dr. J. E. Wülfing's *Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen, Part I.* (Bonn, 1894) has proved indispensable. Advance sheets of the second part of this great work lead one to believe that when completed the three parts will constitute the most important contribution to the study of English syntax that has yet been made. Old English sentences have also been cited from Sweet's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, Bright's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, and Cook's *First Book in Old English.*

The short chapter on the Order of Words has been condensed from my *Order of Words in Anglo-Saxon Prose* (Publications of the Modern Language Association of America, New Series, Vol. I, No. 2).

Though assuming sole responsibility for everything contained in this book, I take pleasure in acknowledging the kind and efficient assistance that has been so generously given me in its preparation. To none do I owe more than to Dr. J. E. Wülfing, of the University of Bonn; Prof. James A. Harrison, of the University of Virginia; Prof. W. S. Currell, of Washington and Lee University; Prof. J. Douglas Bruce, of Bryn Mawr College; and Prof. L. M. Harris, of the University of Indiana. They have each rendered material aid, not only in the tedious task of detecting typographical errors in the proof-sheets, but by the valuable criticisms and suggestions which they have made as this work was passing through the press.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

Louisiana State University,
Baton Rouge, September, 1896.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

In preparing this enlarged edition, a few minor errors in the first edition have been corrected and a few sentences added. The chief difference between the two editions, however, consists in the introduction of more reading matter and the consequent exposition of Old English meter. Both changes have been made at the persistent request of teachers and students of Old English.

Uniformity of treatment has been studiously preserved in the new material and the old, the emphasis in both being placed on syntax and upon the affinities that Old English shares with Modern English.

Many obligations have been incurred in preparing this augmented edition. I have again to thank Dr. J. E. Wülfing, Prof. James A. Harrison, Prof. W. S. Currell, and Prof. J. Douglas Bruce. To the scholarly criticisms also of Prof. J. M. Hart, of Cornell; Prof. Frank Jewett Mather, Jr., of Williams College; and Prof. Frederick Tupper, Jr., of the University of Vermont, I am indebted for aid as generously given as it is genuinely appreciated.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

August, 1898.

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

Among those who have kindly aided in making this edition free from error, I wish to thank especially my friend Dr. John M. McBryde, Jr., of Hollins Institute, Virginia.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

University of North Carolina,
Chapel Hill, February, 1903.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.—INTRODUCTION.

Chapters		Pages
I.	History (§ **1–5**)	1
II.	Sounds (§ **6–11**)	4
III.	Inflections (§ **12–19**)	10
IV.	Order of Words (§ **20–21**)	18
V.	Practical Suggestions (§ **22–24**)	21

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

VI.	The **a**-Declension: Masculine **a**-Stems (§ **25–30**)	27
VII.	Neuter **a**-Stems (§ **31–36**)	30
VIII.	The **ō**-Declension (§ **37–42**)	33
IX.	The **i**-Declension and the **u**-Declension (§ **43–55**)	35
X.	Present Indicative Endings of Strong Verbs (§ **56–62**)	39
XI.	The Weak or **n**-Declension (§ **63–66**)	44
XII.	Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions (§ **67–71**)	47
XIII.	Pronouns (§ **72–77**)	50
XIV.	Adjectives, Strong and Weak (§ **78–87**)	53
XV.	Numerals (§ **88–92**)	57
XVI.	Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions (§ **93–95**)	60
XVII.	Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (§ **96–100**)	64
XVIII.	Strong Verbs: Class I, Syntax of Moods (§ **101–108**)	68
XIX.	Classes II and III (§ **109–113**)	74

Chapters		Pages
XX.	Classes IV, V, VI, and VII; Contract Verbs (§ **114–121**)	78
XXI.	Weak Verbs (§ **122–133**)	82
XXII.	Remaining Verbs; Verb Phrases with **habban**, **bēon**, and **weorðan** (§ **134–143**)	90

PART III. — SELECTIONS FOR READING.

PROSE.

	Introductory	98
I.	The Battle of Ashdown	99
II.	A Prayer of King Alfred	101
III.	The Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan	102
	Ohthere's First Voyage	103
	Ohthere's Second Voyage	106
	Wulfstan's Voyage	107
IV.	The Story of Cædmon	111
V.	Alfred's Preface to the Pastoral Care	116

POETRY.

	Introductory	122
VI.	Extracts from Beowulf	136
VII.	The Wanderer	148

GLOSSARIES.

I.	Old English — Modern English	155
II.	Modern English — Old English	190

OLD ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK.

PART I.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

History.

1. The history of the English language falls naturally into three periods; but these periods blend into one another so gradually that too much significance must not be attached to the exact dates which scholars, chiefly for convenience of treatment, have assigned as their limits. Our language, it is true, has undergone many and great changes; but its continuity has never been broken, and its individuality has never been lost.

2. The first of these periods is that of Old English, or Anglo-Saxon,[1] commonly known as the period of *full*

[1] This unfortunate nomenclature is due to the term *Angli Saxones*, which Latin writers used as a designation for the English Saxons as distinguished from the continental or Old Saxons. But Alfred and Ælfric both use the term *Englisc*, not Anglo-Saxon. The Angles spread over Northumbria and Mercia, far outnumbering the other tribes. Thus *Englisc* (= *Angel* + *isc*) became the general name for the language spoken.

inflections. *E.g.* **stān-as**, *stones;* **car-u**, *care;* **will-a**, *will;* **bind-an**, *to bind;* **help-að** (= **ath**), *they help.*

It extends from the arrival of the English in Great Britain to about one hundred years after the Norman Conquest, —from A.D. 449 to 1150; but there are no literary remains of the earlier centuries of this period. There were four[1] distinct dialects spoken at this time. These were the Northumbrian, spoken north of the river Humber; the Mercian, spoken in the midland region between the Humber and the Thames; the West Saxon, spoken south and west of the Thames; and the Kentish, spoken in the neighborhood of Canterbury. Of these dialects, Modern English is most nearly akin to the Mercian; but the best known of them is the West Saxon. It was in the West Saxon dialect that King Alfred (849-901) wrote and spoke. His writings belong to the period of Early West Saxon as distinguished from the period of Late West Saxon, the latter being best represented in the writings of Abbot Ælfric (955?–1025?).

3. The second period is that of MIDDLE ENGLISH, or the period of *leveled inflections*, the dominant vowel of the inflections being **e**. *E.g.* **ston-es**, **car-e**, **will-e**, **bind-en** (or **bind-e**), **help-eth**, each being, as in the earlier period, a dissyllable.

The Middle English period extends from A.D. 1150 to 1500. Its greatest representatives are Chaucer (1340–1400) in poetry and Wiclif (1324–1384) in prose. There were three prominent dialects during this period: the Northern, corresponding to the older Northumbrian; the Midland

[1] As small as England is, there are six distinct dialects spoken in her borders to-day. Of these the Yorkshire dialect is, perhaps, the most peculiar. It preserves many Northumbrian survivals. See Tennyson's *Northern Farmer.*

(divided into East Midland and West Midland), corresponding to the Mercian; and the Southern, corresponding to the West Saxon and Kentish. London, situated in East Midland territory, had become the dominant speech center; and it was this East Midland dialect that both Chaucer and Wiclif employed.

NOTE. — It is a great mistake to think that Chaucer shaped our language from crude materials. His influence was conservative, not plastic. The popularity of his works tended to crystalize and thus to perpetuate the forms of the East Midland dialect, but that dialect was ready to his hand before he began to write. The speech of London was, in Chaucer's time, a mixture of Southern and Midland forms, but the Southern forms (survivals of the West Saxon dialect) had already begun to fall away; and this they continued to do, so that "Chaucer's language," as Dr. Murray says, "is more Southern than standard English eventually became." See also Morsbach, *Ueber den Ursprung der neuenglischen Schriftsprache* (1888).

4. The last period is that of MODERN ENGLISH, or the period of *lost inflections. E.g. stones, care, will, bind, help,* each being a monosyllable. Modern English extends from A.D. 1500 to the present time. It has witnessed comparatively few grammatical changes, but the vocabulary of our language has been vastly increased by additions from the classical languages. Vowels, too, have shifted their values.

5. It is the object of this book to give an elementary knowledge of Early West Saxon, that is, the language of King Alfred. With this knowledge, it will not be difficult for the student to read Late West Saxon, or any other dialect of the Old English period. Such knowledge will also serve as the best introduction to the structure both of Middle English and of Modern English, besides laying a secure foundation for the scientific study of any other Germanic tongue.

Note. — The Germanic, or Teutonic, languages constitute a branch of the great Aryan, or Indo-Germanic (known also as the Indo-European) group. They are subdivided as follows:

- Germanic
  - North Germanic: Scandinavian, or Norse.
  - East Germanic: Gothic.
  - West Germanic
    - High German
      - Old High German, (to A.D. 1100,)
      - Middle High German, (A.D. 1100–1500,)
      - New High German. (A.D. 1500–.)
    - Low German
      - Dutch,
      - Old Saxon,
      - Frisian,
      - English.

CHAPTER II.

Sounds.

Vowels and Diphthongs.

6. The long vowels and diphthongs will in this book be designated by the macron (¯). Vowel length should in every case be associated by the student with each word learned: quantity alone sometimes distinguishes words meaning wholly different things: **fōr**, *he went*, **for**, *for;* **gōd**, *good*, **God**, *God;* **mān**, *crime.* **man**, *man.*

Long vowels and diphthongs:

ā as in f*a*ther: **stān**, *a stone.*
ǣ as in m*a*n (prolonged): **slǣpan**, *to sleep.*
ē as in th*ey*: **hēr**, *here.*
ī as in mach*i*ne: **mīn**, *mine.*
ō as in n*o*te (pure, not diphthongal): **bōc**, *book.*

ū as in *rule*: **tūn**, *town.*

ȳ as in German grün, or English green (with lips rounded):[1] **brȳd**, *bride.*

The diphthongs, long and short, have the stress upon the first vowel. The second vowel is obscured, and represents approximately the sound of *er* in *sooner*, *faster* (= *soon-uh*, *fast-uh*). The long diphthongs (**ǣ** is not a diphthong proper) are **ēo**, **īe**, and **ēa**. The sound of **ēo** is approximately reproduced in *mayor* (= *mā-uh*); that of **īe** in the dissyllabic pronunciation of *fear* (= *fē-uh*). But **ēa** = *ǣ-uh*. This diphthong is hardly to be distinguished from *ea* in *pear*, *bear*, etc., as pronounced in the southern section of the United States (= *bœ-uh*, *pœ-uh*).

7. The short sounds are nothing more than the long vowels and diphthongs shortened; but the student must at once rid himself of the idea that Modern English *red*, for example, is the shortened form of *reed*, or that *mat* is the shortened form of *mate*. Pronounce these long sounds with increasing rapidity, and *reed* will approach *rid*, while *mate* will approach *met*. The Old English short vowel sounds are:

a as in *a*rtistic: **habban**, *to have.*
æ as in m*a*nkind: **dæg**, *day.*
e, **ę** as in l*e*t: **stelan**, *to steal*, **sęttan**, *to set.*
i as in s*i*t: **hit**, *it.*
o as in br*o*ad (but shorter): **God**, *God.*
ǫ as in n*o*t: **lǫmb**, *lamb.*
u as in f*u*ll: **sunu**, *son.*
y as in m*i*ller (with lips rounded)[1]: **gylden**, *golden.*

[1] Vowels are said to be round, or rounded, when the lip-opening is rounded; that is, when the lips are thrust out and puckered as if

Note. — The symbol **ę** is known as *umlaut*-**e** (§ **58**). It stands for Germanic *a*, while **e** (without the cedilla) represents Germanic *e*. The symbol **ǫ** is employed only before **m** and **n**. It, too, represents Germanic *a*. But Alfred writes **manig** or **monig**, *many;* **lamb** or **lomb**, *lamb;* **hand** or **hond**, *hand*, etc. The cedilla is an etymological sign added by modern grammarians.

Consonants.

8. There is little difference between the values of Old English consonants and those of Modern English. The following distinctions, however, require notice :

The digraph **th** is represented in Old English texts by **ð** and **þ**, no consistent distinction being made between them. In the works of Alfred, **ð** (capital, **Ð**) is the more common : **ðās**, *those;* **ðæt**, *that;* **bindeð**, *he binds.*

The consonant **c** had the hard sound of *k*, the latter symbol being rare in West Saxon : **cyning**, *king;* **cwēn**, *queen;* **cūð**, *known.* When followed by a palatal vowel sound, — *e*, *i*, *æ*, *ea*, *eo*, long or short, — a vanishing *y* sound was doubtless interposed (*cf.* dialectic *k^{y}ind* for *kind*). In Modern English the combination has passed into *ch:* **cealc**, *chalk;* **cīdan**, *to chide;* **lǣce**, *leech;* **cild**, *child;* **cēowan**, *to chew.* This change (*c* > *ch*) is known as Palatalization. The letter **g**, pronounced as in Modern English *gun*, has also a palatal value before the palatal vowels (*cf.* dialectic *g^{y}irl* for *girl*).

The combination **cg**, which frequently stands for **gg**, had probably the sound of *dge* in Modern English *edge:* **ęcg**, *edge;* **sęcgan**, *to say;* **brycg**, *bridge.*

---

preparing to pronounce *w*. Thus *o* and *u* are round vowels: add *-ing* to each, and phonetically you have added *-wing*. *E.g. go^{w}ing*, *su^{w}ing.*

Initial **h** is sounded as in Modern English: **habban**, *to have;* **hālga**, *saint.* When closing a syllable it has the sound of German *ch:* **slōh**, *he slew;* **hēah**, *high;* **ðurh**, *through.*

9. An important distinction is that between voiced (or sonant) and voiceless (or surd) consonants.[1] In Old English they are as follows:

Voiced.	Voiceless.
g	**h**, **c**
d	**t**
ð, **þ** (as in *th*ough)	**ð**, **þ** (as in *th*in)
b	**p**
f (= v)	**f**
s (= z)	**s**

It is evident, therefore, that **ð** (**þ**), **f**, and **s** have double values in Old English. If voiced, they are equivalent to *th* (in *th*ough), *v*, and *z*. Otherwise, they are pronounced as *th* (in *th*in), *f* (in *f*in), and *s* (in *s*in). The syllabic environment will usually compel the student to give these letters their proper values. When occurring between vowels, they are always voiced: **ōðer**, *other;* **ofer**, *over;* **rīsan**, *to rise.*

Note. — The general rule in Old English, as in Modern English, is, that voiced consonants have a special affinity for other voiced consonants, and voiceless for voiceless. This is the law of Assimilation. Thus when *de* is added to form the preterit of a verb whose stem

[1] A little practice will enable the student to see the appropriateness of calling these consonants voiced and voiceless. Try to pronounce a voiced consonant, — *d* in *den*, for example, but without the assistance of *en*, — and there will be heard a gurgle, or *vocal* murmur. But in *t*, of *ten*, there is no sound at all, but only a feeling of tension in the organs.

ends in a voiceless consonant, the **d** is unvoiced, or assimilated, to **t**: **sęttan**, *to set*, **sętte** (but **trędan**, *to tread*, has **trędde**); **slǣpan**, *to sleep*, **slǣpte**; **dręncan**, *to drench*, **dręncte**; **cyssan**, *to kiss*, **cyste**. See § **126**, Note 1.

Syllables.

10. A syllable is usually a vowel, either alone or in combination with consonants, uttered with a single impulse of stress; but certain consonants may form syllables: *oven* (= *ov-n*), *battle* (= *bæt-l*); (*cf.* also the vulgar pronunciation of *elm*).

A syllable may be (1) weak or strong, (2) open or closed, (3) long or short.

(1) A weak syllable receives a light stress. Its vowel sound is often different from that of the corresponding strong, or stressed, syllable. *Cf.* weak and strong *my* in "I want my lárge hat" and "I want mý hat."

(2) An open syllable ends in a vowel or diphthong: **dē-man**, *to deem;* **ðū**, *thou;* **sca-can**, *to shake;* **dæ-ges**, *by day.* A closed syllable ends in one or more consonants: **ðing**, *thing;* **gōd**, *good;* **glæd**, *glad.*

(3) A syllable is long (*a*) if it contains a long vowel or a long diphthong: **drī-fan**, *to drive;* **lū-can**, *to lock;* **slǣ-pan**, *to sleep;* **cēo-san**, *to choose;* (*b*) if its vowel or diphthong is followed by more than one consonant:[1] **cræft**, *strength;* **heard**, *hard;* **līb-ban**, *to live;* **feal-lan**,

[1] Taken separately, every syllable ending in a single consonant is long. It may be said, therefore, that all closed syllables are long; but in the natural flow of language, the single final consonant of a syllable so often blends with a following initial vowel, the syllable thus becoming open and short, that such syllables are not recognized as prevailingly long. *Cf.* Modern English *at all* (= *a-tall*).

to fall. Otherwise, the syllable is short: **ðe**, *which;* **be-ran**, *to bear;* **ðæt**, *that;* **gie-fan**, *to give.*

Note 1. — A single consonant belongs to the following syllable: **hā-lig**, *holy* (not **hāl-ig**); **wrī-tan**, *to write;* **fæ-der**, *father.*

Note 2. — The student will notice that the syllable may be long and the vowel short; but the vowel cannot be long and the syllable short.

Note 3. — Old English short vowels, occurring in open syllables, have regularly become long in Modern English: **we-fan**, *to weave;* **e-tan**, *to eat;* **ma-cian**, *to make;* **na-cod**, *naked;* **a-can**, *to ache;* **o-fer**, *over.* And Old English long vowels, preceding two or more consonants, have generally been shortened: **brēost**, *breast;* **hǣlð**, *health;* **slǣpte**, *slept;* **lǣdde**, *led.*

Accentuation.

11. The accent in Old English falls usually on the radical syllable, never on the inflectional ending: **bríngan**, *to bring;* **stānas**, *stones;* **bérende**, *bearing;* **īdelnes**, *idleness;* **frēondscipe**, *friendship.*

But in the case of compound nouns, adjectives, and adverbs the first member of the compound (unless it be **ge-** or **be-**) receives the stronger stress: **héofon-rīce**, *heaven-kingdom;* **ǫnd-giet**, *intelligence;* **sōð-fæst**, *truthful;* **gód-cund**, *divine;* **éall-unga**, *entirely;* **blīðe-līce**, *blithely.* But **be-hāt**, *promise*; **ge-béd**, *prayer;* **ge-fēalīc**, *joyous;* **be-sōne**, *immediately.*

Compound verbs, however, have the stress on the radical syllable: **for-gíefan**, *to forgive;* **of-línnan**, *to cease;* **ā-cnāwan**, *to know;* **wið-stǫ́ndan**, *to withstand;* **on-sácan**, *to resist.*

Note. — The tendency of nouns to take the stress on the prefix, while verbs retain it on the root, is exemplified in many Modern English words: *préference*, *prefér;* *cóntract* (noun), *contráct* (verb); *ábstinence*, *abstáin;* *pérfume* (noun), *perfúme* (verb).

CHAPTER III.

Inflections.

Cases.

12. There are five cases in Old English: the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the instrumental.[1] Each of them, except the nominative, may be governed by prepositions. When used without prepositions, they have, in general, the following functions:

(*a*) The nominative, as in Modern English, is the case of the subject of a finite verb.

(*b*) The genitive (the possessive case of Modern English) is the case of the possessor or source. It may be called the *of* case.

(*c*) The dative is the case of the indirect object. It may be called the *to* or *for* case.

(*d*) The accusative (the objective case of Modern English) is the case of the direct object.

(*e*) The instrumental, which rarely differs from the dative in form, is the case of the means or the method. It may be called the *with* or *by* case.

The following paradigm of **mūð**, *the mouth*, illustrates the several cases (the article being, for the present, gratuitously added in the Modern English equivalents):

---

[1] Most grammars add a sixth case, the vocative. But it seems best to consider the vocative as only a *function* of the nominative *form*.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	**mūð** = *the mouth.*	**mūð-as** = *the mouths.*
G.	**mūð-es** [1] = *of the mouth* (= *the mouth's*).	**mūð-a** = *of the mouths.* (= *the mouths'*).
D.	**mūð-e** = *to* or *for the mouth.*	**mūð-um** = *to* or *for the mouths.*
A.	**mūð** = *the mouth.*	**mūð-as** = *the mouths.*
I.	**mūðe** = *with* or *by means of the mouth.*	**mūð-um** = *with* or *by means of the mouths.*

Gender.

13. The gender of Old English nouns, unlike that of Modern English, depends partly on meaning and partly on form, or ending. Thus **mūð**, *mouth*, is masculine; **tunge**, *tongue*, feminine; **ēage**, *eye*, neuter.

No very comprehensive rules, therefore, can be given; but the gender of every noun should be learned with its meaning. Gender will be indicated in the vocabularies by the different gender forms of the definite article, **sē** for the masculine, **sēo** for the feminine, and **ðæt** for the neuter: **sē mūð, sēo tunge, ðæt ēage** = *the mouth, the tongue, the eye.*

All nouns ending in **-dōm**, **-hād**, **-scipe**, or **-ere** are masculine (*cf.* Modern English wis*dom*, child*hood*, friend*ship*, work*er*). Masculine, also, are nouns ending in **-a**.

Those ending in **-nes** or **-ung** are feminine (*cf.* Mod-

[1] Of course our "apostrophe and *s*" (= '*s*) comes from the Old English genitive ending **-es**. The *e* is preserved in *Wednesday* (= Old English **Wōdnes dæg**). But at a very early period it was thought that *John's book*, for example, was a shortened form of *John his book*. Thus Addison (*Spectator*, No. 135) declares '*s* a survival of *his*. How, then, would he explain the *s* of *his?* And how would he dispose of *Mary's book?*

ern English good*ness*, and gerundial forms in *-ing:* see*ing* is believ*ing*).

Thus **sē wīsdōm**, *wisdom;* **sē cildhād**, *childhood;* **sē frēondscipe**, *friendship;* **sē fiscere**, *fisher(man)*; **sē hunta**, *hunter;* **sēo gelīcnes**, *likeness;* **sēo leornung**, *learning.*

Declensions.

14. There are two great systems of declension in Old English, the Vowel Declension and the Consonant Declension. A noun is said to belong to the Vowel Declension when the final letter of its stem is a vowel, this vowel being then known as the *stem-characteristic;* but if the stem-characteristic is a consonant, the noun belongs to the Consonant Declension. There might have been, therefore, as many subdivisions of the Vowel Declension in Old English as there were vowels, and as many subdivisions of the Consonant Declension as there were consonants. All Old English nouns, however, belonging to the Vowel Declension, ended their stems originally in **a**, **ō**, **i**, or **u**. Hence there are but four subdivisions of the Vowel Declension: **a**-stems, **ō**-stems, **i**-stems, and **u**-stems.

The Vowel Declension is commonly called the Strong Declension, and its nouns Strong Nouns.

Note. — The terms Strong and Weak were first used by Jacob Grimm (1785-1863) in the terminology of verbs, and thence transferred to nouns and adjectives. By a Strong Verb, Grimm meant one that could form its preterit out of its own resources; that is, without calling in the aid of an additional syllable: Modern English *run, ran; find, found;* but verbs of the Weak Conjugation had to borrow, as it were, an inflectional syllable: *gain, gained; help, helped.*

15. The stems of nouns belonging to the Consonant Declension ended, with but few exceptions, in the letter **n** (*cf.* Latin *homin-em*, *ration-em*, Greek ποιμέν-α). They are called, therefore, **n**-stems, the Declension itself being known as the **n**-Declension, or the Weak Declension. The nouns, also, are called Weak Nouns.

16. If every Old English noun had preserved the original Germanic stem-characteristic (or final letter of the stem), there would be no difficulty in deciding at once whether any given noun is an **a**-stem, **ō**-stem, **i**-stem, **u**-stem, or **n**-stem; but these final letters had, for the most part, either been dropped, or fused with the case-endings, long before the period of historic Old English. It is only, therefore, by a rigid comparison of the Germanic languages with one another, and with the other Aryan languages, that scholars are able to reconstruct a single Germanic language, in which the original stem-characteristics may be seen far better than in any one historic branch of the Germanic group (§ **5**, Note).

This hypothetical language, which bears the same ancestral relation to the historic Germanic dialects that Latin bears to the Romance tongues, is known simply as *Germanic* (Gmc.), or as *Primitive Germanic*. Ability to reconstruct Germanic forms is not expected of the students of this book, but the following table should be examined as illustrating the basis of distinction among the several Old English declensions (O.E. = Old English, Mn.E. = Modern English):

- I. Strong or Vowel Declensions
  - (1) **a**-stems: Gmc. *staina-z*, O.E. **stān**, Mn.E. *stone*.
  - (2) **ō**-stems: Gmc. *hallō*, O.E. **heall**, Mn.E. *hall*.
  - (3) **i**-stems: Gmc. *bōni-z*, O.E. **bēn**, Mn.E. *boon*.
  - (4) **u**-stems: Gmc. *sunu-z*, O.E. **sunu**, Mn.E. *son*.
- II. Consonant Declensions
  - (1) **n**-stems (Weak Declension): Gmc. *tungōn-iz*, O.E. **tung-an**, Mn.E. *tongue-s*.
  - (2) Remnants of other Consonant Declensions
    - (*a*): Gmc. *fōt-iz*, O.E. **fēt**, Mn.E. *feet*.
    - (*b*): Gmc. *frijōnd-iz*, O.E. **frīend**, Mn.E. *friend-s*.
    - (*c*): Gmc. *brōðr-iz*, O.E. **brōðor**, Mn.E. *brother-s*.

Note. — "It will be seen that if Old English **ēage**, *eye*, is said to be an **n**-stem, what is meant is this, that at some former period the kernel of the word ended in **-n**, while, as far as the Old English language proper is concerned, all that is implied is that the word is inflected in a certain manner." (Jespersen, *Progress in Language*, § 109).

This is true of all Old English stems, whether Vowel or Consonant. The division, therefore, into **a**-stems, **ō**-stems, etc., is made in the interests of grammar as well as of philology.

Conjugations.

17. There are, likewise, two systems of conjugation in Old English: the Strong or Old Conjugation, and the Weak or New Conjugation.

The verbs of the Strong Conjugation (the so-called Irregular Verbs of Modern English) number about three hundred, of which not one hundred remain in Modern English (§ **101**, Note). They form their preterit and frequently their past participle by changing the radical vowel of the present stem. This vowel change or modification is called *ablaut* (pronounced *áhp-lowt*): Modern English *sing, sang, sung; rise, rose, risen.* As the radical vowel of the preterit plural is often different from that of the preterit singular, there are four *principal parts* or *tense stems* in an Old English strong verb, instead of the three of Modern English. The four principal parts in the conjugation of a strong verb are (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative singular, (3) the preterit indicative plural, and (4) the past participle.

Strong verbs fall into seven groups, illustrated in the following table:

Present.	Pret. Sing.	Pret. Plur.	Past Participle.
I. **Bītan,** *to bite:*			
Ic bīt-e, *I bite* or *shall bite.*[1]	**Ic bāt,** *I bit.*	**Wē bit-on,** *we bit.*	**Ic hæbbe ge**[2]**-bit-en,** *I have bitten.*
II. **Bēodan,** *to bid:*			
Ic bēod-e, *I bid* or *shall bid.*	**Ic bēad,** *I bade.*	**Wē bud-on,** *we bade.*	**Ic hæbbe ge-bod-en,** *I have bidden.*

[1] Early West Saxon had no distinctive form for the future. The present was used both as present proper and as future. *Cf.* Modern English "I go home tomorrow," or "I am going home tomorrow" for "I shall go home tomorrow."

[2] The prefix **ge-** (Middle English *y-*), cognate with Latin *co* (*con*) and implying completeness of action, was not always used. It never

Present.	Pret. Sing.	Pret. Plur.	Past Participle.
III.			
Bindan, *to bind:*			
Ic bind-e, *I bind* or *shall bind.*	**Ic bǫnd,** *I bound.*	**Wē bund-on,** *we bound.*	**Ic hæbbe ge-bund-en,** *I have bound.*
IV.			
Beran, *to bear:*			
Ic ber-e, *I bear* or *shall bear.*	**Ic bær,** *I bore.*	**Wē bǣr-on,** *we bore.*	**Ic hæbbe ge-bor-en,** *I have borne.*
V.			
Metan, *to measure:*			
Ic met-e, *I measure* or *shall measure.*	**Ic mæt,** *I measured.*	**Wē mǣt-on,** *we measured.*	**Ic hæbbe ge-met-en,** *I have measured.*
VI.			
Faran, *to go:*			
Ic far-e, *I go* or *shall go.*	**Ic fōr,** *I went.*	**Wē fōr-on,** *we went.*	**Ic eom**[1] **ge-far-en,** *I have (am) gone.*
VII.			
Feallan, *to fall:*			
Ic feall-e, *I fall* or *shall fall.*	**Ic fēoll,** *I fell.*	**Wē fēoll-on,** *we fell.*	**Ic eom**[1] **ge-feall-en,** *I have (am) fallen.*

18. The verbs of the Weak Conjugation (the so-called Regular Verbs of Modern English) form their preterit

occurs in the past participles of compound verbs: **oþ-feallan,** *to fall off*, past participle **oþ-feallen** (not **oþ-gefeallen**). Milton errs in prefixing it to a present participle:

> "What needs my Shakespeare, for his honour'd bones,
> The labour of an age in piled stones?
> Or that his hallow'd reliques should be hid
> Under a star-*ypointing* pyramid."
>
> — *Epitaph on William Shakespeare.*

And Shakespeare misuses it in "Y-ravished," a preterit (*Pericles* III, *Prologue* l. 35).

It survives in the archaic *y-clept* (Old English **ge-clypod**, *called*). It appears as *a* in *aware* (Old English **ge-wær**), as *e* in *enough* (Old English **ge-nōh**), and as *i* in *handiwork* (Old English **hand-ge-weorc**).

[1] With intransitive verbs denoting *change of condition*, the Old English auxiliary is usually some form of *to be* rather than *to have*. See § **139**.

and past participle by adding to the present stem a suffix[1] with *d* or *t*: Modern English *love*, *loved*; *sleep*, *slept*.

The stem of the preterit plural is never different from the stem of the preterit singular; hence these verbs have only three distinctive tense-stems, or principal parts: *viz.*, (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative, and (3) the past participle.

Weak verbs fall into three groups, illustrated in the following table:

Present.	Preterit.	Past Participle.
I. **Frȩmman**, *to perform*:		
Ic frȩmm-e, *I perform* or *shall perform*.	**Ic frȩm-ede**, *I performed*.	**Ic hæbbe ge-frȩm-ed**, *I have performed*.
II. **Bodian**, *to proclaim*:		
Ic bodi-e, *I proclaim* or *shall proclaim*.	**Ic bod-ode**, *I proclaimed*.	**Ic hæbbe ge-bod-od**, *I have proclaimed*.
III. **Habban**, *to have*:		
Ic hæbbe, *I have* or *shall have*.	**Ic hæf-de**, *I had*.	**Ic hæbbe ge-hæf-d**, *I have had*.

19. There remain a few verbs (chiefly the Auxiliary Verbs of Modern English) that do not belong entirely to either of the two conjugations mentioned. The most important of them are, **Ic mæg** *I may*, **Ic mihte** *I might*; **Ic cȩn** *I can*, **Ic cūðe** *I could*; **Ic mōt** *I must*, **Ic mōste** *I*

[1] The theory that *loved*, for example, is a fused form of *love-did* has been generally given up. The dental ending was doubtless an Indo-Germanic suffix, which became completely specialized only in the Teutonic languages.

must; **Ic sceal** *I shall*, **Ic sceolde** *I should;* **Ic eom** *I am*, **Ic wæs** *I was;* **Ic wille** *I will*, **Ic wolde** *I would;* **Ic dō** *I do*, **Ic dyde** *I did;* **Ic gā** *I go*, **Ic ēode** *I went.*

All but the last four of these are known as Preterit-Present Verbs. The present tense of each of them is *in origin* a preterit, *in function* a present. *Cf.* Modern English *ought* (= *owed*).

CHAPTER IV.

Order of Words.

20. The order of words in Old English is more like that of Modern German than of Modern English. Yet it is only the Transposed order that the student will feel to be at all un-English; and the Transposed order, even before the period of the Norman Conquest, was fast yielding place to the Normal order.

The three divisions of order are (1) Normal, (2) Inverted, and (3) Transposed.

(1) Normal order = subject + predicate. In Old English, the Normal order is found chiefly in independent clauses. The predicate is followed by its modifiers: **Sē hwæl bið micle lǣssa þonne ōðre hwalas,** *That whale is much smaller than other whales;* **Ǫnd hē geseah twā scipu,** *And he saw two ships.*

(2) Inverted order = predicate + subject. This order occurs also in independent clauses, and is employed (*a*) when some modifier of the predicate precedes the predicate, the subject being thrown behind. The

words most frequently causing Inversion in Old English prose are **þā** *then*, **þonne** *then*, and **þǣr** *there*: **Đā fōr hē**, *Then went he;* **Đonne ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þǣm fēo**, *Then gallop they all toward the property;* **ac þǣr bið medo genōh**, *but there is mead enough.*

Inversion is employed (*b*) in interrogative sentences: **Lufast ðū mē?** *Lovest thou me?* and (*c*) in imperative sentences: **Cume ðīn rīce**, *Thy kingdom come.*

(3) Transposed order = subject . . . predicate. That is, the predicate comes last in the sentence, being preceded by its modifiers. This is the order observed in dependent clauses:[1] **Đonne cymeð sē man sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse* (literally, *that the swiftest horse has*); **Ne mētte hē ǣr nān gebūn land, siþþan hē frǫm his āgnum hām fōr**, *Nor did he before find any cultivated land, after he went from his own home* (literally, *after he from his own home went*).

21. Two other peculiarities in the order of words require a brief notice.

(1) Pronominal datives and accusatives usually precede the predicate: **Hē hine oferwann**, *He overcame him* (literally, *He him overcame*); **Dryhten him andwyrde**, *The Lord answered him.* But substantival datives and accusatives, as in Modern English, follow the predicate.

[1] But in the *Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan*, in which the style is apparently more that of oral than of written discourse, the Normal is more frequent than the Transposed order in dependent clauses. In his other writings Alfred manifests a partiality for the Transposed order in dependent clauses, except in the case of substantival clauses introduced by **þæt**. Such clauses show a marked tendency to revert to their Normal *oratio recta* order. The norm thus set by the indirect affirmative clause seems to have proved an important factor in the

The following sentence illustrates both orders: **Hȳ genāmon Ioseph, ǫnd hine gesealdon cīpemǫnnum, ǫnd hȳ hine gesealdon in Ēgypta lǫnd,** *They took Joseph, and sold him to merchants, and they sold him into Eyypt* (literally, *They took Joseph, and him sold to merchants, and they him sold into Egyptians' land*).

Note. — The same order prevails in the case of pronominal nominatives used as predicate nouns: **Ic hit eom,** *It is I* (literally, *I it am*); **Đū hit eart,** *It is thou* (literally, *Thou it art*).

(2) The attributive genitive, whatever relationship it expresses, usually precedes the noun which it qualifies: **Breoton is gārsecges īgland,** *Britain is an island of the ocean* (literally, *ocean's island*); **Swilcæ hit is ēac berende on węcga ōrum,** *Likewise it is also rich in ores of metals* (literally, *metals' ores*); **Cyninga cyning,** *King of kings* (literally, *Kings' king*); **Gē witon Godes rīces gerȳne,** *Ye know the mystery of the kingdom of God* (literally, *Ye know God's kingdom's mystery*).

A preposition governing the word modified by the genitive, precedes the genitive:[1] **On ealdra manna sægenum,** *In old men's sayings;* **Æt ðæra strǣta ęndum,** *At the ends of the streets* (literally, *At the streets' ends*); **For ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan,** *For all thy saints' love.* See, also, § **94**, (5).

---

ultimate disappearance of Transposition from dependent clauses. The influence of Norman French helped only to consummate forces that were already busily at work.

[1] The positions of the genitive are various. It frequently follows its noun: **þā bearn þāra Aðeniensa,** *The children of the Athenians.* It may separate an adjective and a noun: **Ān lȳtel sǣs earm,** *A little arm of (the) sea.* The genitive may here be construed as an adjective, or part of a compound = *A little sea-arm;* **Mid mǫnegum Godes gifum,** *With many God-gifts = many divine gifts.*

CHAPTER V.

Practical Suggestions.

22. In the study of Old English, the student must remember that he is dealing not with a foreign or isolated language but with the earlier forms of his own mother tongue. The study will prove profitable and stimulating in proportion as close and constant comparison is made of the old with the new. The guiding principles in such a comparison are reducible chiefly to two. These are (1) the regular operation of phonetic laws, resulting especially in certain Vowel Shiftings, and (2) the alterations in form and syntax that are produced by Analogy.

(1) "The former of these is of physiological or *natural* origin, and is perfectly and inflexibly regular throughout the same period of the same language; and even though different languages show different phonetic habits and predilections, there is a strong general resemblance between the changes induced in one language and in another; many of the particular laws are true for many languages.

(2) "The other principle is psychical, or mental, or *artificial*, introducing various more or less capricious changes that are supposed to be emendations; and its operation is, to some extent, uncertain and fitful."[1]

---

[1] Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology*, Second Series, § 342. But Jespersen, with Collitz and others, stoutly contests "the theory of sound laws and analogy sufficing between them to explain everything in linguistic development."

(1) Vowel-Shiftings.

23. It will prove an aid to the student in acquiring the inflections and vocabulary of Old English to note carefully the following shiftings that have taken place in the gradual growth of the Old English vowel system into that of Modern English.

(1) As stated in § 3, the Old English inflectional vowels, which were all short and unaccented, weakened in early Middle English to *e*. This *e* in Modern English is frequently dropped:

Old English.	Middle English.	Modern English.
stān-as	ston-es	stones
sun-u	sun-e	son
sun-a	sun-e	sons
ox-an	ox-en	oxen
swift-ra	swift-er	swifter
swift-ost	swift-est	swiftest
lōc-ode	lok-ede	looked

(2) The Old English long vowels have shifted their phonetic values with such uniform regularity that it is possible in almost every case to infer the Modern English sound; but our spelling is so chaotic that while the student may infer the modern sound, he cannot always infer the modern symbol representing the sound.

Old English.	Modern English.	
ā	*o* (as in *no*)[1]	**nā** = *no*; **stān** = *stone*; **bān** = *bone*; **rād** = *road*; **āc** = *oak*; **hāl** = *whole*; **hām** = *home*; **sāwan** = *to sow*; **gāst** = *ghost*.

[1] But Old English **ā** preceded by **w** sometimes gives Modern English *o* as in *two*: **twā** = *two*; **hwā** = *who*; **hwām** = *whom*.

Old English.	Modern English.	
ē	*e* (as in *he*)	**hē** = *he*; **wē** = *we*; **ðē** = *thee*; **mē** = *me*; **gē** = *ye*; **hēl** = *heel*; **wērig** = *weary*; **gelēfan** = *to believe*; **gēs** = *geese*.
ī (**ȳ**)	*i* (*y*) (as in *mine*)	**mīn** = *mine*; **ðīn** = *thine*; **wīr** = *wire*; **mȳs** = *mice*; **rīm** = *rime* (wrongly spelt *rhyme*); **lȳs** = *lice*; **bī** = *by*; **scīnan** = *to shine*; **stig-rāp** = *sty-rope* (shortened to *stirrup*, **stīgan** meaning *to mount*).
ō	*o* (as in *do*)	**dō** = *I do*; **tō** = *too, to*; **gōs** = *goose*; **tōð** = *tooth*; **mōna** = *moon*; **dōm** = *doom*; **mōd** = *mood*; **wōgian** = *to woo*; **slōh** = *I slew*.
ū	*ou* (*ow*) (as in *thou*)	**ðū** = *thou*; **fūl** = *foul*; **hūs** = *house*; **nū** = *now*; **hū** = *how*; **tūn** = *town*; **ūre** = *our*; **ūt** = *out*; **hlūd** = *loud*; **ðūsend** = *thousand*.
ǣ, **ēa**, **ēo**	*ea* (as in *sea*)	**ǣ**: **sǣ** = *sea*; **mǣl** = *meal*; **dǣlan** = *to deal*; **clǣne** = *clean*; **grǣdig** = *greedy*. **ēa**: **ēare** = *ear*; **ēast** = *east*; **drēam** = *dream*; **gēar** = *year*; **bēatan** = *to beat*. **ēo**: **ðrēo** = *three*; **drēorig** = *dreary*; **sēo** = *she*; **hrēod** = *reed*; **dēop** = *deep*.

(2) Analogy.

24. But more important than vowel shifting is the great law of Analogy, for Analogy shapes not only words but constructions. It belongs, therefore, to

Etymology and to Syntax, since it influences both form and function. By this law, minorities tend to pass over to the side of the majorities. "The greater mass of cases exerts an assimilative influence upon the smaller."[1] The effect of Analogy is to simplify and to regularize. "The main factor in getting rid of irregularities is group-influence, or Analogy — the influence exercised by the members of an association-group on one another. . . . Irregularity consists in partial isolation from an association-group through some formal difference."[2]

Under the influence of Analogy, entire declensions and conjugations have been swept away, leaving in Modern English not a trace of their former existence. There are in Old English, for example, five plural endings for nouns, **-as**, **-a**, **-e**, **-u**, and **-an**. No one could well have predicted[3] that **-as** (Middle English *-es*) would soon take the lead, and become the norm to which the other endings would eventually conform, for there were more **an**-plurals than **as**-plurals; but the **as**-plurals were doubtless more often employed in every-day speech. *Oxen* (Old English **oxan**) is the sole pure survival of the hundreds of Old English **an**-plurals.

---

[1] Whitney, *Life and Growth of Language*, Chap. IV.

[2] Sweet, *A New English Grammar*, Part I., § 535.

[3] As Skeat says (§ 22, (2)), Analogy is "fitful." It enables us to explain many linguistic phenomena, but not to anticipate them. The multiplication of books tends to check its influence by perpetuating the forms already in use. Thus Chaucer employed nine *en*-plurals, and his influence served for a time to check the further encroachment of the *es*-plurals. As soon as there is an acknowledged standard in any language, the operation of Analogy is fettered.

No group of feminine nouns in Old English had **-es** as the genitive singular ending; but by the close of the Middle English period all feminines formed their genitive singular in *-es* (or *-s*, Modern English *'s*) after the analogy of the Old English masculine and neuter nouns with **es**-genitives. The weak preterits in **-ode** have all been leveled under the **ed**-forms, and of the three hundred strong verbs in Old English more than two hundred have become weak.

These are not cases of derivation (as are the shifted vowels): Modern English *-s* in *sons*, for example, could not possibly be derived from Old English **-a** in **suna**, or Middle English *-e* in *sune* (§ **23**, (1)). They are cases of replacement by Analogy.

A few minor examples will quicken the student's appreciation of the nature of the influence exercised by Analogy:

(*a*) The intrusive *l* in *could* (Chaucer always wrote *coud* or *coude*) is due to association with *would* and *should*, in each of which *l* belongs by etymological right.

(*b*) *He need not* (for *He needs not*) is due to the assimilative influence of the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, etc., which have never added *-s* for their third person singular (§ **137**).

(*c*) *I am friends with him*, in which *friends* is a crystalized form for *on good terms*, may be traced to the influence of such expressions as *He and I are friends*, *They are friends*, etc.

(*d*) Such errors as are seen in *runned*, *seed*, *gooses*, *badder*, *hisself*, *says I* (usually coupled with *says he*)

are all analogical formations. Though not sanctioned by good usage, it is hardly right to call these forms the products of "false analogy." The grammar involved is false, because unsupported by literary usages and traditions; but the analogy on which these forms are built is no more false than the law of gravitation is false when it makes a dress sit unconventionally.

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

The Strong or Vowel Declensions of Nouns. The a-Declension.

CHAPTER VI.

(*a*) Masculine *a*-Stems.

[O.E., M.E., and Mn.E. will henceforth be used for Old English, Middle English, and Modern English. Other abbreviations employed are self-explaining.]

25. The a-Declension, corresponding to the Second or *o*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only (*a*) masculine and (*b*) neuter nouns. To this declension belong most of the O.E. masculine and neuter nouns of the Strong Declension. At a very early period, many of the nouns belonging properly to the i- and u-Declensions began to pass over to the a-Declension. This declension may therefore be considered the *normal declension* for all masculine and neuter nouns belonging to the Strong Declension.

26. Paradigms of sē mūð, *mouth;* sē fiscere, *fisherman;* sē hwæl, *whale;* sē mearh, *horse;* sē finger, *finger:*

Sing. N.A.	mūð	fiscer-e	hwæl	mearh	**finger**
G.	mūð-es	fiscer-es	hwæl-es	mēar-es	fingr-es
D.I.	mūð-e	fiscer-e	hwæl-e	mēar-e	fingr-e
Plur. N.A.	mūð-as	fiscer-as	hwal-as	mēar-as	fingr-as
G.	mūð-a	fiscer-a	hwal-a	mēar-a	fingr-a
D.I.	mūð-um	fiscer-um	hwal-um	mēar-um	fingr-um

Note. — For meanings of the cases, see § **12**. The dative and instrumental are alike in all nouns.

27. The student will observe (1) that nouns whose nominative ends in **-e** (**fiscere**) drop this letter before adding the case endings; (2) that **æ** before a consonant (**hwæl**) changes to **a** in the plural;[1] (3) that **h**, preceded by **r** (**mearh**) or **l** (**seolh**, *seal*), is dropped before an inflectional vowel, the stem diphthong being then lengthened by way of compensation; (4) that dissyllables (**finger**) having the first syllable long, usually syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before adding the case endings.[2]

28. Paradigm of the Definite Article[3] **sē, sēo, ðæt** = *the:*

[1] Adjectives usually retain **æ** in closed syllables, changing it to **a** in open syllables: **hwæt** (*active*), **glæd** (*glad*), **wær** (*wary*) have G. **hwates**, **glades**, **wares**; D. **hwatum**, **gladum**, **warum**; but A. **hwætne**, **glædne**, **wærne**. Nouns, however, change to **a** only in open syllables followed by a guttural vowel, **a** or **u**. The **æ** in the open syllables of the singular is doubtless due to the analogy of the N.A. singular, both being closed syllables.

[2] *Cf.* Mn.E. *drizz'ling*, *rememb'ring*, *abysmal* (*abysm* = *abiz^{u}m*), *sick'ning*, in which the principle of syncopation is precisely the same.

[3] This may mean four things: (1) *The*, (2) *That* (demonstrative), (3) *He*, *she*, *it*, (4) *Who*, *which*, *that* (relative pronoun). Mn.E. demonstrative *that* is, of course, the survival of O.E. neuter **ðæt** in its demonstrative sense. Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, § 160, 3) sees a survival of dative plural demonstrative **ðǣm** in such an expression as *in them days*. It seems more probable, however, that *them* so used has followed the lead of

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	sē (se)	sēo	ðæt
G.	ðæs	ðǣre	ðæs
D.	ðǣm (ðām)	ðǣre	ðǣm (ðām)
A.	ðone	ðā	ðæt
I.	ðȳ, ðon	——	ðȳ, ðon

	All Genders.
Plur. N.A.	ðā
G.	ðāra
D.	ðǣm (ðām)

29. Vocabulary.[1]

sē bōcere, *scribe* [bōc].
sē cyning, *king.*
sē dæg, *day.*
sē ęnde, *end.*
sē ęngel, *angel* [angelus].
sē frēodōm, *freedom.*
sē fugol (G. sometimes **fugles**), *bird* [fowl].
sē gār, *spear* [gore, gar-fish].
sē heofon, *heaven.*
sē hierde, *herdsman* [shep-herd].
ǫnd (**and**), *and.*
sē sęcg, *man, warrior.*
sē seolh, *seal.*
sē stān, *stone.*
sē wealh, *foreigner, Welshman* [wal-nut].
sē weall, *wall.*
sē wīsdōm, *wisdom.*
sē wulf, *wolf.*

30. Exercises.

I. 1. Ðāra wulfa mūðas. 2. Ðæs fisceres fingras. 3. Ðāra Wēala cyninge. 4. Ðǣm ęnglum ǫnd ðǣm hierdum. 5. Ðāra

---

this and *these*, *that* and *those*, in their double function of pronoun and adjective. There was doubtless some such evolution as, *I saw them. Them what? Them boys.*

An unquestioned survival of the dative singular feminine of the article is seen in the *-ter* of *Atterbury* (= **æt ðǣre byrig**, *at the town*); and **ðǣm** survives in the *-ten* of *Attenborough*, the word *borough* having become an uninflected neuter. Skeat, *Principles*, First Series, § 185.

[1] The brackets contain etymological hints that may help the student to discern relationships otherwise overlooked. The genitive is given only when not perfectly regular.

daga ęnde. 6. Ðǣm bōcerum ǫnd ðǣm sęcgum ðæs cyninges. 7. Ðǣm sēole ǫnd ðǣm fuglum. 8. Ðā stānas ǫnd ðā gāras. 9. Hwala ǫnd mēara. 10. Ðāra ęngla wīsdōm. 11. Ðæs cyninges bōceres frēodōm. 12. Ðāra hierda fuglum. 13. Ðȳ stāne. 14. Ðǣm wealle.

II. 1. For the horses and the seals. 2. For the Welshmen's freedom. 3. Of the king's birds. 4. By the wisdom of men and angels. 5. With the spear and the stone. 6. The herdsman's seal and the warriors' spears. 7. To the king of heaven. 8. By means of the scribe's wisdom. 9. The whale's mouth and the foreigner's spear. 10. For the bird belonging to (= of) the king's scribe. 11. Of that finger.

CHAPTER VII.

(*b*) Neuter *a*-Stems.

31. The neuter nouns of the a-Declension differ from the masculines only in the N.A. plural.

32. Paradigms of **ðæt hof**, *court, dwelling;* **ðæt bearn**, *child;* **ðæt bān**, *bone;* **ðæt rīce**, *kingdom;* **ðæt spere**, *spear;* **ðæt werod**, *band of men;* **ðæt tungol**, *star:*

Sing. N.A.	hof	bearn	bān	rīc-e	sper-e	werod	tungol
G.	hof-es	bearn-es	bān-es	rīc-es	sper-es	werod-es	tungl-es
D.I.	hof-e	bearn-e	bān-e	rīc-e	sper-e	werod-e	tungl-e
Plur. N.A.	hof-u	bearn	bān	rīc-u	sper-u	werod	tungl-u
G.	hof-a	bearn-a	bān-a	rīc-a	sper-a	werod-a	tungl-a
D.I.	hof-um	bearn-um	bān-um	rīc-um	sper-um	werod-um	tungl-um

33. The paradigms show (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**hof**) take **-u** in the N.A. plural; (2) that

monosyllables with long stems (**bearn**, **bān**) do not distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular;[1] (3) that dissyllables in **-e**, whether the stem be long or short (**rīce**, **spere**), have **-u** in the N.A. plural; (4) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable short[2] (**werod**) do not usually distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; (5) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable long (**tungol**) more frequently take **-u** in the N.A. plural.

Note. — Syncopation occurs as in the masculine **a**-stems. See § **27**, (4).

34. Present and Preterit Indicative of **habban**, *to have:*

Present.

Sing. 1. **Ic hæbbe**, *I have*, or *shall have.*[3]
2. **ðū hæfst** (**hafast**), *thou hast*, or *wilt have.*
3. **hē, hēo, hit hæfð** (**hafað**), *he, she, it has*, or *will have.*

Plur. 1. **wē habbað**, *we have*, or *shall have.*
2. **gē habbað**, *ye have*, or *will have.*
3. **hīe habbað**, *they have*, or *will have.*

Preterit.

Sing. 1. **Ic hæfde**, *I had.*
2. **ðū hæfdest**, *thou hadst.*
3. **hē, hēo, hit hæfde**, *he, she, it had.*

Plur. 1. **wē hæfdon**, *we had.*
2. **gē hæfdon**, *ye had.*
3. **hīe hæfdon**, *they had.*

---

[1] Note the many nouns in Mn.E. that are unchanged in the plural. These are either survivals of O.E. long stems, *swine*, *sheep*, *deer*, *folk*, or analogical forms, *fish*, *trout*, *mackerel*, *salmon*, etc.

[2] Dissyllables whose first syllable is a prefix are, of course, excluded. They follow the declension of their last member: **gebed**, *prayer*, **gebedu**, *prayers;* **gefeoht**, *battle*, **gefeohte**, *battles.*

[3] See § **17**, Note 1. Note that (as in **hwæl**, § **27**, (2)) **æ** changes to **a** when the following syllable contains **a**: **hæbbe**, but **hafast**.

Note. — The negative ne, *not*, which always precedes its verb, contracts with all the forms of **habban**. The negative loses its **e**, **habban** its **h**. **Ne** + **habban** = **nabban**; **Ic ne hæbbe** = **Ic næbbe**; **Ic ne hæfde** = **Ic næfde**, etc. The negative forms may be got, therefore, by simply substituting in each case **n** for **h**.

35. Vocabulary.

ðæt dæl, *dale.*
ðæt dēor, *animal* [deer[1]].
ðæt dor, *door.*
ðæt fæt, *vessel* [vat].
ðæt fȳr, *fire.*
ðæt gēar, *year.*
ðæt geoc, *yoke.*
ðæt geset, *habitation* [settlement].
ðæt hēafod, *head.*
ðæt hūs, *house.*
ðæt līc, *body* [lich-gate].
ðæt lim, *limb.*
on (with dat.) *in.*
ðæt spor, *track.*
ðæt wǣpen, *weapon.*
ðæt wīf, *wife, woman.*
ðæt wīte, *punishment.*
ðæt word, *word.*

36. Exercises.

I. 1. Hē hafað ðæs cyninges bearn. 2. Ðā Wēalas habbað ðā speru. 3. Ðā wīf habbað ðāra sęcga wǣpnu. 4. Ðū hæfst ðone fugol ǫnd ðæt hūs ðæs hierdes. 5. Hæfð[2] hēo ðā fatu[3]? 6. Hæfde hē ðæs wīfes līc on ðǣm hofe? 7. Hē næfde ðæs wīfes līc; hē hæfde ðæs dēores hēafod. 8. Hæfð sē cyning gesetu on ðǣm dæle? 9. Sē bōcere hæfð ðā sēolas on ðǣm hūse. 10. Gē habbað frēodōm.

II. 1. They have yokes and spears. 2. We have not the vessels in the house. 3. He had fire in the vessel. 4. Did the woman have (= Had the woman) the children? 5. The animal has the body of the woman's child. 6. I shall have

[1] The old meaning survives in Shakespeare's "Rats and mice and such small deer," *King Lear*, III, 4, 144.

[2] See § **20**, (2), (*b*). [3] See § **27**, (2).

the heads of the wolves. 7. He and she have the king's houses. 8. Have not (= **Nabbað**) the children the warrior's weapons?

CHAPTER VIII.

The ō-Declension.

37. The **ō**-Declension, corresponding to the First or *ā*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only feminine nouns. Many feminine **i**-stems and **u**-stems soon passed over to this Declension. The **ō**-Declension may, therefore, be considered the *normal declension* for all strong feminine nouns.

38. Paradigms of **sēo giefu**, *gift;* **sēo wund**, *wound;* **sēo rōd**, *cross;* **sēo leornung**, *learning;* **sēo sāwol**, *soul:*

Sing. N.	gief-u	wund	rōd	leornung	sāwol
G.	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
D.I.	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
A.	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
Plur. N.A.	gief-a	wund-a	rōd-a	leornung-a	sāwl-a
G.	gief-a	wund-a	rōd-a	leornung-a	sāwl-a
D.I.	gief-um	wund-um	rōd-um	leornung-um	sāwl-um

39. Note (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**giefu**) take **u** in the nominative singular; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (**wund**, **rōd**) present the unchanged stem in the nominative singular; (3) that dissyllables are declined as monosyllables, except that abstract nouns in **-ung** prefer **a** to **e** in the singular.

Note. — Syncopation occurs as in masculine and neuter **a**-stems. See § **27**, (4).

40. Present and Preterit Indicative of **bēon (wesan)**, *to be:*

	Present (first form).	Present (second form).	Preterit.
Sing. 1.	Ic eom	1. Ic bēom	1. Ic wæs
2.	ðū eart	2. ðū bist	2. ðū wǣre
3.	hē is	3. hē bið	3. hē wæs
Plur. 1.	wē }	1. wē }	1. wē }
2.	gē } sind (on), sint	2. gē } bēoð	2. gē } wǣron
3.	hīe }	3. hīe }	3. hīe }

Note 1. — The forms **bēom, bist,** etc. are used chiefly as future tenses in O.E. They survive to-day only in dialects and in poetry. Farmer Dobson, for example, in Tennyson's *Promise of May*, uses *be* for all persons of the present indicative, both singular and plural; and *there be* is frequent in Shakespeare for *there are*. The Northern dialect employed **aron** as well as **sindon** and **sind** for the present plural; hence Mn.E. *are*.

Note 2. — Fusion with **ne** gives **neom, neart, nis** for the present; **næs, nǣre, nǣron** for the preterit.

Note 3. — The verb *to be* is followed by the nominative case, as in Mn.E.; but when the predicate noun is plural, and the subject a neuter pronoun in the singular, the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun. The neuter singular **ðæt** is frequently employed in this construction: **Ðæt wǣron eall Finnas**, *They were all Fins;* **Ðæt sind ęnglas**, *They are angels;* **Ðæt wǣron ęngla gāstas**, *They were angels' spirits.*

Notice, too, that O.E. writers do not say *It is I, It is thou*, but *I it am, Thou it art:* **Ic hit eom, ðū hit eart.** See § **21**, (1), Note 1.

41. Vocabulary.

sēo brycg, *bridge.*
sēo costnung, *temptation.*
sēo cwalu, *death* [quail, quell].
sēo fōr, *journey* [faran].
sēo frōfor, *consolation, comfort.*
sēo geoguð, *youth.*
sēo glōf, *glove.*
sēo hālignes[1] *holiness.*
sēo heall, *hall.*
hēr, *here.*

[1] All words ending in **-nes** double the **-s** before adding the case endings.

hwā, *who?*
hwǣr, *where?*
sēo lufu, *love.*
sēo mearc, *boundary* [mark, marches[1]].
sēo mēd, *meed, reward.*
sēo mildheortnes, *mild-heartedness, mercy.*
sēo stōw, *place* [stow away].
ðǣr, *there.*
sēo ðearf, *need.*
sēo wylf, *she wolf.*

42. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hwǣr is ðǣre brycge ende? 2. Hēr sind ðāra rīca mearca. 3. Hwā hæfð þā glōfa? 4. Ðǣr bið ðǣm cyninge frōfre ðearf. 5. Sēo wund is on ðǣre wylfe hēafde. 6. Wē habbað costnunga. 7. Hīe nǣron on ðǣre healle. 8. Ic hit neom. 9. Ðæt wǣron Wēalas. 10. Ðæt sind ðæs wīfes bearn.

II. 1. We shall have the women's gloves. 2. Where is the place? 3. He will be in the hall. 4. Those (**Ðæt**) were not the boundaries of the kingdom. 5. It was not I. 6. Ye are not the king's scribes. 7. The shepherd's words are full (**full** + gen.) of wisdom and comfort. 8. Where are the bodies of the children? 9. The gifts are not here. 10. Who has the seals and the birds?

CHAPTER IX.

THE i-DECLENSION AND THE u-DECLENSION.

The *i*-Declension. (See § 58.)

43. The i-Declension, corresponding to the group of *i*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains chiefly (*a*) masculine and (*b*) feminine nouns. The N.A. plural of these nouns ended originally in -e (from older i).

[1] As in *warden of the marches.*

(*a*) Masculine *i*-Stems.

44. These stems have almost completely gone over to the a-Declension, so that **-as** is more common than **-e** as the N.A. plural ending, whether the stem is long or short. The short stems all have **-e** in the N.A. singular.

45. Paradigms of **sē wyrm**, *worm;* **sē wine**, *friend.*

Sing. N.A.	wyrm	win-e
G.	wyrm-es	win-es
D.I.	wyrm-e	win-e
Plur. N.A.	wyrm-as	win-as (e)
G.	wyrm-a	win-a
D.I.	wyrm-um	win-um

Names of Peoples.

46. The only i-stems that regularly retain **-e** of the N.A. plural are certain names of tribes or peoples used only in the plural.

47. Paradigms of **ðā Ƿngle**, *Angles;* **ðā Norðymbre**, *Northumbrians;* **ðā lēode**, *people:*

Plur. N.A.	Ƿngle	Norðymbre	lēode
G.	Ƿngla	Norðymbra	lēoda
D.I.	Ƿnglum	Norðymbrum	lēodum

(*b*) Feminine *i*-Stems.

48. The short stems (**frȩm-u**) conform entirely to the declension of short ō-stems; long stems (**cwēn**, **wyrt**) differ from long ō-stems in having no ending for the A. singular. They show, also, a preference for **-e** rather than **-a** in the N.A. plural.

49. Paradigms of **sēo frȩm-u**, *benefit;* **sēo cwēn**, *woman, queen* [quean]; **sēo wyrt**, *root* [wort]:

Sing. N.	frȩm-u	cwēn	wyrt
G.	frȩm-e	cwēn-e	wyrt-e
D.I.	frȩm-e	cwēn-e	wyrt-e
A.	frȩm-e	cwēn	wyrt
Plur. N.A.	frȩm-a	cwēn-e (a)	wyrt-e (a)
G.	frȩm-a	cwēn-a	wyrt-a
D.I.	frȩm-um	cwēn-um	wyrt-um

The *u*-Declension.

50. The **u**-Declension, corresponding to the group of **u**-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains no neuters, and but few (*a*) masculines and (*b*) feminines. The short-stemmed nouns of both genders (**sun-u, dur-u**) retain the final **u** of the N.A. singular, while the long stems (**feld, hȩnd**) drop it. The influence of the masculine **a**-stems is most clearly seen in the long-stemmed masculines of the **u**-Declension (**feld, feld-es**, etc.).

Note. — Note the general aversion of all O.E. long stems to final **-u**: *cf.* N.A. plural **hof-u**, but **bearn, bān**; N. singular **gief-u**, but **wund, rōd**; N. singular **frȩm-u**, but **cwēn, wyrt**; N.A. singular **sun-u, dur-u**, but **feld, hȩnd**.

(*a*) Masculine *u*-Stems.

51. Paradigms of **sē sun-u**, *son;* **sē feld**, *field:*

Sing. N.A.	sun-u	feld
G.	sun-a	feld-a (es)
D.I.	sun-a	feld-a (e)
Plur. N.A.	sun-a	feld-a (as)
G.	sun-a	feld-a
D.I.	sun-um	feld-um

(*b*) Feminine *u*-Stems.

52. Paradigms of **sēo dur-u**, *door;* **sēo hǫnd**, *hand:*

Sing.	*N.A.*	dur-u	hǫnd
	G.	dur-a	hǫnd-a
	D.I.	dur-a	hǫnd-a
Plur.	*N.A.*	dur-a	hǫnd-a
	G.	dur-a	hǫnd-a
	D.I.	dur-um	hǫnd-um

53. Paradigm of the Third Personal Pronoun, **hē, hēo, hit** = *he, she, it:*

		Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing.	*N.*	hē	hēo	hit
	G.	his	hiere	his
	D.	him	hiere	him
	A.	hine, hiene	hīe	hit

		All Genders.
Plur.	*N.A.*	hīe
	G.	hiera
	D.	him

54. VOCABULARY.

(**i**-STEMS.)

sē cierr, *turn, time* [char, chare, chore].
sēo dǣd, *deed.*
sē dǣl, *part* [a great deal].
ðā Dęne, *Danes.*
sē frēondscipe, *friendship.*
sēo hȳd, *skin, hide.*
ðā lǫndlēode, *natives.*
ðā Mierce, *Mercians.*
ðā Rōmware, *Romans.*
ðā Seaxe, *Saxons.*
sē stęde, *place* [in-stead of].

(**u**-STEMS.)

sēo flōr, *floor.*
sēo nosu, *nose.*
sē sumor (*G.* **sumeres**, *D.* **sumera**), *summer.*
sē winter (*G.* **wintres**, *D.* **wintra**), *winter.*
sē wudu, *wood, forest.*

NOTE. — The numerous masculine nouns ending in **-hād**, — **cildhād** (*childhood*), **wīfhād** (*womanhood*), — belong to the **u**-stems historically; but they have all passed over to the **a**-Declension.

55. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Đā Seaxe habbað đæs dēores hȳd on đǣm wuda. 2. Hwā hæfð đā giefa? 3. Đā Mierce hīe[1] habbað. 4. Hwǣr is đæs Wēales fugol? 5. Đā Dęne hiene habbað. 6. Hwǣr sindon hiera winas? 7. Hīe sindon on đæs cyninges wuda. 8. Đā Rōmware ǫnd đā Seaxe hæfdon đā gāras ǫnd đā geocu. 9. Hēo is on đǣm hūse on wintra, ǫnd on đǣm feldum on sumera. 10. Hwǣr is đæs hofes duru? 11. Hēo[2] (= sēo duru) nis hēr.

II. 1. His friends have the bones of the seals and the bodies of the Danes. 2. Art thou the king's son? 3. Has she her[3] gifts in her[3] hands? 4. Here are the fields of the natives. 5. Who had the bird? 6. I had it.[2] 7. The child had the worm in his[3] fingers. 8. The Mercians were here during (the) summer (**on** + dat.).

CHAPTER X.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS.

56. The unchanged stem of the present indicative may always be found by dropping **-an** of the infinitive: **feall-an**, *to fall;* **cēos-an**, *to choose;* **bīd-an**, *to abide.*

57. The personal endings are:

Sing. 1.	**-e**	*Plur.* 1.	**-að**
2.	**-est**	2.	
3.	**-eð**	3.	

[1] See § **21**, (1).

[2] Pronouns agree in gender with the nouns for which they stand. **Hit**, however, sometimes stands for inanimate things of both masculine and feminine genders. See Wülfing (*l.c.*) I, § 238.

[3] See § **76** (last sentence).

i-Umlaut.

58. The 2d and 3d singular endings were originally not **-est** and **-eð**, but **-is** and **-ið**; and the **i** of these older endings has left its traces upon almost every page of Early West Saxon literature. This **i**, though unaccented and soon displaced, exerted a powerful back influence upon the vowel of the preceding accented syllable. This influence, a form of regressive assimilation, is known as **i**-umlaut (pronounced *oó'm-lowt*). The vowel **i** or **j** (= *y*), being itself a palatal, succeeded in palatalizing every guttural vowel that preceded it, and in imposing still more of the **i**-quality upon diphthongs that were already palatal.[1] The changes produced were these:

a	became	**ę** (**æ**):	**męnn** (< ***mann-iz**), *men.*
ā	"	**ǣ**	**ǣnig** (< ***ān-ig**), *any.*
u	"	**y**	**wyllen** (< ***wull-in**), *woollen.*
ū	"	**ȳ**	**mȳs** (< ***mūs-iz**), *mice.*
o	"	**ę**	**dęhter** (< ***dohtr-i**), *to* or *for the daughter.*
ō	"	**ē**	**fēt** (< ***fōt-iz**), *feet.*
ea	"	**ie**	**wiexð** (< ***weax-ið**), *he grows* (**weaxan** = *to grow*).
ēa	"	**īe**	**hīewð** (< ***hēaw-ið**), *he hews* (**hēawan** = *to hew*).
eo	"	**ie**	**wiercan** (< ***weorc-jan**), *to work.*
ēo	"	**īe**	**līehtan** (< ***lēoht-jan**), *to light.*

The Unchanged Present Indicative.

59. In the Northumbrian and Mercian dialects, as well as in the dialect of Late West Saxon, the 2d and 3d singular endings were usually joined to the present

[1] The *palatal* vowels and diphthongs were long or short **æ**, **e**, **i**, (**ie**), **y**, **ea**, **eo**; the *guttural* vowels were long or short **a**, **o**, **u**.

stem without modification either of the stem itself or of the personal endings. The complete absence of umlauted forms in the present indicative of Mn.E. is thus accounted for.

In Early West Saxon, however, such forms as the following are comparatively rare in the 2d and 3d singular:

Sing.	1.	Ic feall-e (*I fall*)	cēos-e (*I choose*)	bīd-e (*I abide*)
	2.	ðū feall-est	cēos-est	bīd-est
	3.	hē feall-eð	cēos-eð	bīd-eð
Plur.	1.	wē		
	2.	gē } feall-að	cēos-að	bīd-að
	3.	hīe		

The Present Indicative with *i*-Umlaut and Contraction.

60. The 2d and 3d persons singular are distinguished from the other forms of the present indicative in Early West Saxon by (1) i-umlaut of the vowel of the stem, (2) syncope of the vowel of the ending, giving **-st** and **-ð** for **-est** and **-eð**, and (3) contraction of **-st** and **-ð** with the final consonant or consonants of the stem.

Contraction.

61. The changes produced by i-umlaut have been already discussed. By these changes, therefore, the stems of the 2d and 3d singular indicative of such verbs as (1) **stǫndan** (= **standan**), *to stand*, (2) **cuman**, *to come*, (3) **grōwan**, *to grow*, (4) **brūcan**, *to enjoy*, (5) **blāwan**, *to blow*, (6) **feallan**, *to fall*, (7) **hēawan**, *to hew*, (8) **weorpan**, *to throw*, and (9) **cēosan**, *to choose*,

become respectively (1) **stęnd-**,[1] (2) **cym-**, (3) **grēw-**, (4) **brȳc-**, (5) **blǣw-**, (6) **fiell-**, (7) **hīew-**, (8) **wierp-**, and (9) **cīes-**.

If the unchanged stem contains the vowel **e**, this is changed in the 2d and 3d singular to **i** (**ie**): **cweðan** *to say*, stem **cwið-**; **beran** *to bear*, stem **bier-**. But this mutation[2] had taken place long before the period of O.E., and belongs to the Germanic languages in general. It is best, however, to class the change of **e** to **i** or **ie** with the changes due to umlaut, since it occurs consistently in the 2d and 3d singular stems of Early West Saxon, and outlasted almost all of the umlaut forms proper.

If, now, the syncopated endings **-st** and **-ð** are added directly to the umlauted stem, there will frequently result such a massing of consonants as almost to defy pronunciation: **cwið-st**, *thou sayest;* **stęnd-st**, *thou standest*, etc. Some sort of contraction, therefore, is demanded for the sake of euphony. The ear and eye will, by a little practice, become a sure guide in these contractions. The following rules, however, must be observed. They apply only to the 2d and 3d singular of the present indicative:

---

[1] The more common form for stems with **a** is **æ** rather than **ę**: **faran**, *to go*, 2d and 3d singular stem **fær-**; **sacan**, *to contend*, stem **sæc-**. Indeed, **a** changes to **ę** *via* **æ** (Cosijn, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*, I, § 32).

[2] Umlaut is frequently called Mutation. Metaphony is still another name for the same phenomenon. The term Metaphony has the advantage of easy adjectival formation (metaphonic). It was proposed by Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, Paris, 1894), but has not been naturalized.

(1) If the stem ends in a double consonant, one of the consonants is dropped:

1. feall-e (*I fall*)	1. winn-e (*I fight*)	1. swimm-e (*I swim*)
2. fiel-st	2. win-st	2. swim-st
3. fiel-ð	3. win-ð	3. swim-ð

(2) If the stem ends in **-ð**, this is dropped:

1. cweð-e (*I say*)	1. weorð-e (*I become*)
2. cwi-st	2. wier-st
3. cwi-ð	3. wier-ð

(3) If the stem ends in **-d**, this is changed to **-t**. The **-ð** of the ending is then also changed to **-t**, and usually absorbed. Thus the stem of the 2d singular serves as stem and ending for the 3d singular:

1. stǫnd-e (= stand-e) (*I stand*)	1. bind-e (*I bind*)
2. stęnt-st	2. bint-st
3. stęnt	3. bint
1. bīd-e (*I abide*)	1. rīd-e (*I ride*)
2. bīt-st	2. rīt-st
3. bīt (-t)	3. rīt (-t)

(4) If the stem ends already in **-t**, the endings are added as in (3), **-ð** being again changed to **-t** and absorbed:

1. brēot-e (*I break*)	1. feoht-e (*I fight*)	1. bīt-e (*I bite*)
2. brīet-st	2. fieht-st	2. bīt-st
3. brīet (-t)	3. fieht	3. bīt (-t)

(5) If the stem ends in **-s**, this is dropped before **-st** (to avoid **-sst**), but is retained before **-ð**, the latter being changed to **-t**. Thus the 2d and 3d singulars are identical:[1]

[1] This happens also when the infinitive stem ends in **st**:

1. berst-e (*I burst*)
2. bier-st
3. bierst.

1. cēos-e (*I choose*)	1. rīs-e (*I rise*)
2. cīe-st	2. rī-st
3. cīes-t	3. rīs-t

62. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē cyning fielð. 2. Đā wīf cēosað ðā giefa. 3. Đū stęntst on ðǣm hūse. 4. Hē wierpð ðæt wǣpen. 5. Sē sęcg hīewð ðā līc. 6. Đæt sǣd grēwð ǫnd wiexð (*Mark* iv. 27). 7. Ic stǫnde hēr, ǫnd ðū stęntst ðǣr. 8. "Ic hit eom," cwið hē. 9. Hīe berað ðæs wulfes bān. 10. Hē hīe bint, ǫnd ic hine binde. 11. Ne rītst ðū?

II. 1. We shall bind him. 2. Who chooses the child's gifts? 3. "He was not here," says she. 4. Wilt thou remain in the hall? 5. The wolves are biting (= bite) the fishermen. 6. He enjoys[1] the love of his children. 7. Do you enjoy (= Enjoyest thou) the consolation and friendship of the scribe? 8. Will he come? 9. I shall throw the spear, and thou wilt bear the weapons. 10. The king's son will become king. 11. The army (**werod**) is breaking the doors and walls of the house.

CHAPTER XI.

THE CONSONANT DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

The Weak or *n*-Declension.

63. The n-Declension contains almost all of the O.E. nouns belonging to the Consonant Declensions. The stem characteristic n has been preserved in the oblique

[1] **Brūcan**, *to enjoy*, usually takes the genitive case, not the accusative. It means "to have joy *of* anything."

cases, so that there is no difficulty in distinguishing **n**-stems from the preceding vowel stems.

The **n**-Declension includes (*a*) masculines, (*b*) feminines, and (*c*) neuters. The masculines far outnumber the feminines, and the neuters contain only **ēage**, *eye* and **ēare**, *ear*. The masculines end in **-a**, the feminines and neuters in **-e**.

64. Paradigms of (*a*) **sē hunta**, *hunter;* (*b*) **sēo tunge**, *tongue;* (*c*) **ðæt ēage**, *eye:*

Sing. N.	hunt-a	tung-e	ēag-e
G.D.I.	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-an
A.	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-e
Plur. N.A.	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-an
G.	hunt-ena	tung-ena	ēag-ena
D.I.	hunt-um	tung-um	ēag-um

65. VOCABULARY.

sē adesa, *hatchet, adze.*
sē ǣmetta, *leisure* [empt-iness].
sē bona (**bana**), *murderer* [bane].
sēo cirice, *church* [Scotch kirk].
sē cnapa (later, **cnafa**), *boy* [knave].
sē cuma, *stranger* [comer].
ðæt ēare, *ear.*
sēo eorðe, *earth.*
sē gefēra, *companion* [co-farer].
sē guma, *man* [bride-groom[1]].
sēo heorte, *heart.*
sē mōna, *moon.*
sēo nǣdre, *adder* [a nadder > an adder[2]].
sē oxa, *ox.*
sē scēowyrhta, *shoe-maker* [shoe-wright].
sēo sunne, *sun.*
sē tēona, *injury* [teen].
biddan (with dat. of person and gen. of thing[3]), *to request, ask for.*
cwelan, *to die* [quail].

[1] The *r* is intrusive in *-groom*, as it is in *cart-r-idge, part-r-idge, vag-r-ant,* and *hoa-r-se.*

[2] The *n* has been appropriated by the article. Cf. *an apron* (< *a napron*), *an auger* (< *a nauger*), *an orange* (< *a norange*), *an umpire* (< *a numpire*).

[3] In Mn.E. we say "I request a favor of you"; but in O.E. it was

gescieppan, *to create* [shape, land-scape, friend-ship].
giefan (with dat. of indirect object), *to give.*
healdan, *to hold.*
helpan (with dat.), *to help.*
scęððan[1] (with dat.), *to injure* [scathe].
wiðstǫndan (**-standan**) (with dat.), *to withstand.*
wrītan, *to write.*

66. Exercises.

I. 1. Sē scēowyrhta brȳcð his ǣmettan. 2. Đą̄ guman biddað ðǣm cnapan ðæs adesan. 3. Hwā is sē cuma? 4. Hielpst ðū ðǣm bǫnan? 5. Ic him ne helpe. 6. Đā bearn scęððað ðæs bǫnan ēagum ǫnd ēarum. 7. Sē cuma cwielð on ðǣre cirican. 8. Sē hunta wiðstęnt ðǣm wulfum. 9. Đā oxan berað ðæs cnapan gefēran. 10. Sē mōna ǫnd ðā tunglu sind on ðǣm heofonum. 11. Đā huntan healdað ðǣre nǣdran tungan. 12. Hē hiere giefð ðā giefa. 13. Đā werod scęððað ðæs cyninges feldum.

II. 1. Who will bind the mouths of the oxen? 2. Who gives him the gifts? 3. Thou art helping him, and I am injuring him. 4. The boy's companion is dying. 5. His nephew does not enjoy his leisure. 6. The adder's tongue injures the king's companion. 7. The sun is the day's eye. 8. She asks the strangers for the spears. 9. The men's bodies are not here. 10. Is he not (**Nis hē**) the child's murderer? 11. Who creates the bodies and the souls of men? 12. Thou withstandest her. 13. He is not writing.

"I request you (dative) of a favor" (genitive). Cf. *Cymbeline*, III, 6, 92: "We'll mannerly demand thee of thy story." See Franz's *Shakespeare-Grammatik*, § 361 (1900).

[1] **Scęððan** is conjugated through the present indicative like **fręman**. See § 129.

CHAPTER XII.

Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions.

67. The nouns belonging here are chiefly masculines and feminines. Their stem ended in a consonant other than **n**. The most important of them may be divided as follows: (1) The *foot* Declension, (2) **r**-Stems, and (3) **nd**-Stems. These declensions are all characterized by the prevalence, wherever possible, of **i**-umlaut in certain cases, the case ending being then dropped.

68. (1) The nouns belonging to the *foot* Declension exhibit umlaut most consistently in the N.A. plural.

Sing. N.A.	sē fōt (*foot*)	sē mǫn (*man*)	sē tōð (*tooth*)	sēo cū (*cow*)
Plur. N.A.	fēt	męn	tēð	cȳ

Note. — The dative singular usually has the same form as the N.A. plural. Here belong also **sēo bōc** (*book*), **sēo burg** (*borough*), **sēo gōs** (*goose*), **sēo lūs** (*louse*), and **sēo mūs** (*mouse*), all with umlauted plurals. Mn.E. preserves only six of the *foot* Declension plurals: *feet*, *men*, *teeth*, *geese*, *lice*, and *mice*. The *c* in the last two is an artificial spelling, intended to preserve the sound of voiceless *s*. Mn.E. *kine* (= *cy-en*) is a double plural formed after the analogy of weak stems; Burns in *The Twa Dogs* uses *kye*.

No umlaut is possible in **sēo niht** (*night*) and **sē mōnað** (*month*), plural **niht** and **mōnað** (preserved in Mn.E. *twelvemonth* and *fortnight*).

(2) The **r**-Stems contain nouns expressing kinship, and exhibit umlaut of the dative singular.

Sing. N.A.	sē fæder (*father*)	sē brōðor (*brother*)	sēo mōdor (*mother*)	sēo dohtor (*daughter*)	sēo swuster (*sister*)
D.	fæder	brēðer	mēder	dęhter	swyster

Note. — The N.A. plural is usually the same as the N.A. singular. These umlaut datives are all due to the presence of a former **i**. Cf. Lat. dative singular *patri*, *frātri*, *mātri*, *sorori* (<**sosori*), and Greek θυγατρί.

(3) The **nd**-Stems show umlaut both in the N.A. plural and in the dative singular:

Sing. N.A.	sē frēond (*friend*)	sē fēond (*enemy*)
D.	frīend	fīend
Plur. N.A.	frīend	fīend

Note. — Mn.E. *friend* and *fiend* are interesting analogical spellings. When **s** had been added by analogy to the O.E. plurals **frīend** and **fīend**, thus giving the double plurals *friends* and *fiends*, a second singular was formed by dropping the **s**. Thus *friend* and *fiend* displaced the old singulars *frend* and *fend*, both of which occur in the M.E. *Ormulum*, written about the year 1200.

Summary of O.E. Declensions.

69. A brief, working summary of the O.E. system of declensions may now be made on the basis of gender.

All O.E. nouns are (1) masculine, (2) feminine, or (3) neuter.

(1) The masculines follow the declension of **mūð** (§ **26**), except those ending in **-a**, which are declined like **hunta** (§ **64**):

Sing. N.A.	mūð	*N.*	hunta
G.	mūðes	*G.D.A.*	huntan
D.I.	mūðe	*I.*	huntan
Plur. N.A.	mūðas		huntan
G.	mūða		huntena
D.I.	mūðum		huntum

(2) The short-stemmed neuters follow the declension of **hof** (§ **32**); the long-stemmed, that of **bearn** (§ **32**):

Sing. N.A.	hof	bearn
G.	hofes	bearnes
D.I.	hofe	bearne
Plur. N.A.	hofu	bearn
G.	hofa	bearna
D.I.	hofum	bearnum

(3) The feminines follow the declensions of **giefu** and **wund** (§ **38**) (the only difference being in the N. singular), except those ending in **-e**, which follow the declension of **tunge** (§ **64**):

Sing. N.	giefu	wund	tunge
G.	giefe	wunde	tungan
D.I.	giefe	wunde	tungan
A.	giefe	wunde	tungan
Plur. N.A.	giefa	wunda	tungan
G.	giefa	wunda	tungena
D.I.	giefum	wundum	tungum

70. Vocabulary.

ac, *but.*
būtan (with dat.), *except, but, without.*
sē Crīst, *Christ.*
sē eorl, *earl, alderman, warrior.*
ðæt Ẹnglalọnd, *England* [Angles' land].
faran, *to go* [fare].
findan, *to find.*
sē God, *God.*
hātan, *to call, name.*
sē hlāford, *lord* [**hlāf-weard**].
mid (with dat.), *with.*
on (with acc.), *on, against, into.*
ṭō (with dat.), *to.*
uton (with infin.), *let us.*

Note. — O.E. **mọn** (**man**) is frequently used in an indefinite sense for *one, people, they.* It thus takes the place of a passive construction proper: **And man nam þā gebrotu þe þār belifon, twęlf cȳpan fulle**, *And there were taken up of fragments that remained there twelve baskets full;* but more literally, *And one* (or *they*) *took the fragments*, etc.; **Ọnd Hæstenes wīf ọnd his suna twēgen mọn brōhte tō ðǣm cyninge**, *And Hæsten's wife and his two sons were brought to the king.*

71. Exercises.

I. 1. Mọn hine hæt Ælfred. 2. Uton faran on ðæt scip. 3. God is cyninga cyning ọnd hlāforda hlāford. 4. Sē eorl ne giefð giefa his fīend. 5. Ic næs mid his frīend. 6. Sēo mōdor færð mid hiere dęhter on ðā burg. 7. Fintst ðū ðæs

bōceres bēc? 8. Hē bint ealle (all) ðā dēor būtan ðǣm wulfum. 9. Đū eart Crīst, Godes sunu. 10. "Uton bindan ðæs bonan fēt," cwið hē.

II. 1. Christ is the son of God. 2. Let us call him Cædmon. 3. He throws his spear against the door. 4. Thou art not the earl's brother. 5. He will go with his father to England, but I shall remain (abide) here. 6. Gifts are not given to murderers. 7. Who will find the tracks of the animals? 8. They ask their lord for his weapons (§ **65**, Note 3).

CHAPTER XIII.

Pronouns.

(1) Personal Pronouns.

72. Paradigms of **ic**, *I;* **ðū**, *thou.* For **hē, hēo, hit,** see § **53.**

Sing.	*N.*	ic	ðū
	G.	mīn	ðīn
	D.	mē	ðē
	A.	mē (mec)	ðē (ðec)
Dual	*N.*	wit (*we two*)	git (*ye two*)
	G.	uncer (*of us two*)	incer (*of you two*)
	D.	unc (*to* or *for us two*)	inc (*to* or *for you two*)
	A.	unc (*us two*)	inc (*you two*)
Plur.	*N.*	wē	gē
	G.	ūser (ūre)	ēower
	D.	ūs	ēow
	A.	ūs (ūsic)	ēow (ēowic)

Note 1. — The dual number was soon absorbed by the plural. No relic of it now remains. But when two and only two are referred to, the dual is consistently used in O.E. An example occurs in the case

of the two blind men (*Matthew* ix. 27–31): **Gemiltsa unc, Davīdes sunu!** *Pity us, (thou) Son of David!* **Sīe inc æfter incrum gelēafan,** *Be it unto you according to your faith.*

Note 2. — Mn.E. *ye* (< **gē**), the nominative proper, is fast being displaced by *you* (< **ēow**), the old objective. The distinction is preserved in the King James's version of the Bible: *Ye in me, and I in you* (*John* xiv. 20); but not in Shakespeare and later writers.

(2) Demonstrative Pronouns.

73. Paradigm of **ðēs, ðēos, ðis,** *this.* For the Definite Article as a demonstrative, meaning *that*, see § **28**, Note 3.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	ðēs	ðēos	ðis
G.	ðisses	ðisse	ðisses
D.	ðissum	ðisse	ðissum
A.	ðisne	ðās	ðis
I.	ðȳs	——	ðȳs

	All Genders.
Plur. N.A.	ðās
G.	ðissa
D.	ðissum

(3) The Interrogative Pronoun.

74. Paradigm of **hwā, hwæt,** *who, what?*

	Masculine.	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	hwā	hwæt
G.	hwæs	hwæs
D.	hwǣm	hwǣm
A.	hwone	hwæt
I.	——	hwȳ

Note 1. — The derivative interrogatives, **hwæðer** (< ***hwā-ðer**), *which of two?* and **hwilc** (<***hwā-līc**), *which?* are declined as strong adjectives (§§ **79–82**).

Note 2. — The instrumental case of **hwā** survives in Mn.E. *why* = *on what account;* the instrumental of the definite article is seen in the

adverbial *the: The sooner, the better = by how much sooner, by so much better.*

Note 3. — How were the Mn.E. relative pronouns, *who* and *which*, evolved from the O.E. interrogatives? The change began in early West Saxon with **hwæt** used in indirect questions (Wülfing, *l.c.* § 310, β): **Nū ic wāt eall hwæt ðū woldest**, *Now I know all that thou desiredst.* The direct question was, **Hwæt woldest ðū?** But the presence of **eall** shows that in Alfred's mind **hwæt** was, in the indirect form, more relative than interrogative.

(4) Relative Pronouns.

75. O.E. had no relative pronoun proper. It used instead (1) the Indeclinable Particle **ðe**, *who, whom, which, that*, (2) the Definite Article (§ **28**), (3) the Definite Article with the Indeclinable Particle, (4) the Indeclinable Particle with a Personal Pronoun.

The Definite Article agrees in gender and number with the antecedent. The case depends upon the construction. *The bird which I have* may, therefore, be: —

(1) **Sē fugol ðe ic hæbbe**;
(2) **Sē fugol ðone ic hæbbe**;
(3) **Sē fugol ðone ðe** (= *the which*) **ic hæbbe**;
(4) **Sē fugol ðe hine ic hæbbe.**

Note. — O.E. **ðe** agrees closely in construction with Mn.E. relative *that:* (1) Both are indeclinable. (2) Both refer to animate or inanimate objects. (3) Both may be used with phrasal value: **ðȳ ylcan dæge ðe hī hine tō ðǣm āde beran wyllað**, *On the same day that* (= *on which*) *they intend to bear him to the funeral pile.* (4) Neither can be preceded by a preposition.

(5) Possessive Pronouns.

76. The Possessive Pronouns are **mīn**, *mine;* **ðīn**, *thine;* **ūre**, *our;* **ēower**, *your;* [**sīn**, *his, her, its*]; **uncer**, *belonging to us two;* **incer**, *belonging to you two.* They

are declined as strong adjectives. The genitives of the Third Personal Pronoun, **his**, *his*, **hiere**, *her*, **hiera**, *their*, are indeclinable.

(6) Indefinite Pronouns.

77. These are **ǣlc**, *each, every;* **ān**, *a, an, one;* **ǣnig** (<**ān-ig**), *any;* **nǣnig** (<**ne-ǣnig**), *none;* **ōðer**, *other;* **sum**, *one, a certain one;* **swilc**, *such.* They are declined as strong adjectives.

Note. — O.E. had three established methods of converting an interrogative pronoun into an indefinite: (1) By prefixing **ge**, (2) by prefixing **ǣg**, (3) by interposing the interrogative between **swā** . . . **swā**: (1) **gehwā**, *each;* **gehwæðer**, *either;* **gehwilc**, *each;* (2) **ǣghwā**, *each;* **ǣghwæðer**, *each;* **ǣghwilc**, *each;* (3) **swā hwā swā**, *whosoever;* **swā hwæðer swā**, *whichsoever of two;* **swā hwilc swā**, *whosoever.*

CHAPTER XIV.

Adjectives, Strong and Weak.

78. The declension of adjectives conforms in general to the declension of nouns, though a few pronominal inflections have influenced certain cases. Adjectives belong either to (1) the Strong Declension or to (2) the Weak Declension. The Weak Declension is employed when the adjective is preceded by **sē** or **ðēs**, *the, that,* or *this;* otherwise, the Strong Declension is employed: **ðā gōdan cyningas**, *the good kings;* **ðēs gōda cyning**, *this good king;* but **gōde cyningas**, *good kings.*

Note. — The Weak Declension is also frequently used when the adjective is employed in direct address, or preceded by a possessive

pronoun: **Dryhten, ælmihtiga God . . . ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse,** *Lord, almighty God, I pray thee, for thy great mercy.*

(1) Strong Declension of Adjectives.

(*a*) *Monosyllables.*

79. The strong adjectives are chiefly monosyllabic with long stems: **gōd**, *good;* **eald**, *old;* **lǫng**, *long;* **swift**, *swift.* They are declined as follows.

80. Paradigm of **gōd**, *good:*

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	gōd	gōd	gōd
G.	gōdes	gōdre	gōdes
D.	gōdum	gōdre	gōdum
A.	gōdne	gōde	gōd
I.	gōde	——	gōde
Plur. N.A.	gōde	gōda	gōd
G.	gōdra	gōdra	gōdra
D.I.	gōdum	gōdum	gōdum

81. If the stem is short, **-u** is retained as in **giefu** (§ 39, (1)) and **hofu** (§ 33, (1)). Thus **glæd** (§ 27, Note 1), *glad*, and **til**, *useful*, are inflected:

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	glæd	gladu	glæd
	til	tilu	til
Plur. N.A.	glade	glada	gladu
	tile	tila	tilu

(*b*) *Polysyllables.*

82. Polysyllables follow the declension of short monosyllables. The most common terminations are **-en**, *-en;* **-fæst**, *-fast;* **-full**, *-ful;* **-lēas**, *-less;* **-līc**, *-ly;* **-ig**, *-y:* **hǣð-en** (**hǣð** = *heath*), *heathen;* **stęde-fæst** (**stęde**

= *place*), *steadfast*; **sorg-full** (**sorg** = *sorrow*), *sorrowful*; **cyst-lēas** (**cyst** = *worth*), *worthless*; **eorð-līc** (**eorðe** = *earth*), *earthly*; **blōd-ig** (**blōd** = *blood*), *bloody*. The present and past participles, when inflected and not as weak adjectives, may be classed with the polysyllabic adjectives, their inflection being the same.

Syncopation occurs as in **a**-stems (§ **27**, (4)). Thus **hālig**, *holy*, **blīðe**, *blithe*, **berende**, *bearing*, **geboren**, *born*, are thus inflected:

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	hālig	hālgu	hālig
	blīðe	blīðu	blīðe
	berende	berendu	berende
	geboren	geborenu	geboren
Plur. N.A.	hālge	hālga	hālgu
	blīðe	blīða	blīðu
	berende	berenda	berendu
	geborene	geborena	geborenu

(2) Weak Declension of Adjectives.

83. The Weak Declension of adjectives, whether monosyllabic or polysyllabic, does not differ from the Weak Declension of nouns, except that **-ena** of the genitive plural is usually replaced by **-ra** of the strong adjectives.

84.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing. N.	gōda	gōde	gōde
G.	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
D.I.	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
A.	gōdan	gōdan	gōde

	All Genders.
Plur. N.A.	gōdan
G.	gōdra (gōdena)
D.I.	gōdum

85. RULE OF SYNTAX.

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; but participles, when used predicatively, may remain uninflected (§ **139**, § **140**).

86. VOCABULARY.

dēad, *dead.*
eall, *all.*
hāl,[1] *whole, hale.*
heard, *hard.*
ðæt hors, *horse.*
lēof, *dear* [as lief].
lȳtel, *little.*
micel, *great, large.*
mǫnig, *many.*
niman, *to take* [nimble, numb].
nīwe, *new.*
rīce, *rich, powerful.*
sōð, *true* [sooth-sayer].
stælwierðe,[2] *serviceable* [stal-wart].
swīðe, *very.*
sē tūn, *town, village.*
sē ðegn, *servant, thane, warrior.*
ðæt ðing, *thing.*
sē weg, *way.*
wīs, *wise.*
wið (with acc.), *against*, in a hostile sense [with-stand].
sē ilca, *the same* [of that ilk].

87. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðās scipu ne sind swīðe swift, ac hīe sind swīðe stælwierðu. 2. Sēo gōde cwēn giefð ælcum ðegne mǫniga giefa. 3. Ðēs wīsa cyning hæfð mǫnige micele tūnas on his rīce. 4. Nænig mǫn is wīs on eallum ðingum. 5. Ðȳ ilcan dæge (§ **98**, (2)) mǫn fǫnd (found) ðone ðegn ðe mīnes wines bēc hæfde. 6. Ealle ðā sęcgas ðā ðe swift hors habbað rīdað wið ðone bǫnan. 7. Ðīne fīend sind mīne

[1] **Hālig**, *holy*, contains, of course, the same root. "I find," says Carlyle, "that you could not get any better definition of what 'holy' really is than 'healthy — completely healthy.'"

[2] This word has been much discussed. The older etymologists explained it as meaning *worth stealing*. A more improbable conjecture is that it means *worth a stall* or *place*. It is used of ships in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. As applied to men, Skeat thinks it meant *good* or *worthy at stealing*; but the etymology is still unsettled.

frīend. 8. Sē micela stān ðone ðe ic on mīnum hǫndum hæbbe is swīðe heard. 9. Hīe scęððað ðām caldum horsum. 10. Uton niman ðās tilan giefa ǫnd hīe beran tō ūrum lēofum bearnum.

II. 1. These holy men are wise and good. 2. Are the little children very dear to the servants (dat. without **tō**)? 3. Gifts are not given (§ **70**, Note 1) to rich men. 4. All the horses that are in the king's fields are swift. 5. These stones are very large and hard. 6. He takes the dead man's spear and fights against the large army. 7. This new house has many doors. 8. My ways are not your ways. 9. Whosoever chooses me, him I also (**ēac**) choose. 10. Every man has many friends that are not wise.

CHAPTER XV.

Numerals.

88. Numerals are either (*a*) Cardinal, expressing pure number, *one*, *two*, *three;* or (*b*) Ordinal, expressing rank or succession, *first*, *second*, *third*.

(*a*) Cardinals.

89. The Cardinals fall into the three following syntactic groups:

Group I.

1. ān
2. twēgen [twain]
3. ðrīe

These numerals are inflected adjectives. **Ān**, *one*, *an*, *a*, being a long stemmed monosyllable, is declined like **gōd** (§ **80**). The weak form, **āna**, means *alone*.

Twēgen and **ðrīe**, which have no singular, are thus declined:

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Plur. N.A.	twēgen	twā	twā (tū)	ðrīe	ðrēo	ðrēo
G.	twēgra	twēgra	twēgra	ðrēora	ðrēora	ðrēora
D.	twēm	twēm	twēm	ðrīm	ðrīm	ðrīm
	(twām)	(twām)	(twām)			

90. GROUP II.

4.	fēower	12.	twęlf
5.	fīf	13.	ðrēotīene
6.	siex	14.	fēowertīene
7.	seofon	15.	fīftīene
8.	eahta	16.	siextīene
9.	nigon	17.	seofontīene
10.	tīen	18.	eahtatīene
11.	ęndlefan	19.	nigontīene

These words are used chiefly as uninflected adjectives: **on gewitscipe ðrēora oþþe fēower bisceopa**, *on testimony of three or four bishops;* **on siex dagum**, *in six days;* **ān nædre ðe hæfde nigon hēafdu**, *a serpent which had nine heads;* **æðeling eahtatīene wintra**, *a prince of eighteen winters.*

91. GROUP III.

20.	twēntig	80.	hundeahtatig
21.	ān ǫnd twēntig	90.	hundnigontig
30.	ðrītig	100.	hund
40.	fēowertig	200.	twā hund
50.	fīftig	1000.	ðūsend
60.	siextig	2000.	twā ðūsend
70.	hundseofontig		

All these numbers are employed as neuter singular nouns, and are followed by the genitive plural: **Næfde hē þēah mā ðonne twēntig hrȳðera, and twēntig scēapa, and**

twēntig swȳna, *He did not have, however, more than twenty (of) cattle, and twenty (of) sheep, and twenty (of) swine;* **Hīe hæfdon hundeahtatig scipa**, *They had eighty ships;* **twā hund mīla brād**, *two hundred miles broad;* **ðǣr wǣron seofon hund gūðfanena genumen**, *there were seven hundred standards captured;* **ān ðūsend mǫnna**, *a thousand men;* **Hannibales folces wæs twā ðūsend ofslagen**, *Of Hannibal's men there were two thousand slain;* **Hīe ācuron ęndlefan ðūsend mǫnna**, *They chose eleven thousand men.*

Note 1. — Group III is rarely inflected. Almost the only inflectional endings that are added are (1) **-es**, a genitive singular termination for the numerals in **-tig**, and (2) **-e**, a dative singular for **hund**. (1) The first is confined to adjectives expressing extent of space or time, as, **eald**, *old;* **brād**, *broad;* **hēah**, *high;* and **lǫng**, *long:* **ðæt is ðrītiges mīla lǫng**, *that is thirty miles long;* **Hē wæs ðrītiges gēara eald**, *He was thirty years old.* (2) The second is employed after **mid**: **mid twǣm hunde scipa**, *with two hundred ships;* **mid ðrīm hunde mǫnna**, *with three hundred men;* **Ðǣr wearð . . . Regulus gefangen mid V hunde mǫnna**, *There was Regulus captured with five hundred men.*

The statement made in nearly all the grammars that **hunde** occurs as a nominative and accusative plural is without foundation.

Note 2. — Many numerals, otherwise indeclinable, are used in the genitive plural with the indefinite pronoun **sum**, which then means *one of* a certain number. In this peculiar construction, the numeral always precedes **sum**: **fēowera sum**, *one of four (= with three others)*; **Hē sǣde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig**, *He said that he, with five others, slew sixty (whales)*; **Hē wæs fēowertigra sum**, *He was one of forty.*

Note 3. — These are the most common constructions with the Cardinals. The forms in **-tig** have only recently been investigated. A study of Wülfing's citations shows that Alfred occasionally uses the forms in **-tig** (1) as adjectives with plural inflections: **mid XXXgum cyningum**, *with thirty kings;* and (2) as nouns with plural inflections: **æfter siextigum daga**, *after sixty days.* But both constructions are rare.

(*b*) Ordinals.

92. The Ordinals, except the first two, are formed from the Cardinals. They are:

1. forma, æresta, fyrsta	11. ęndlefta
2. ōðer, æfterra	12. twęlfta
3. ðridda	13. ðrēotēoða
4. fēorða	14. fēowertēoða
5. fīfta	15. fīftēoða
6. siexta	etc.
7. seofoða	20. twēntigoða
8. eahtoða	21. ān ęnd twēntigoða
9. nigoða	30. ðrītigoða
10. tēoða	etc.

Note.—There are no Ordinals corresponding to **hund** and **ðūsend**.

With the exception of **ōðer** (§ **77**), all the Ordinals are declined as Weak Adjectives; the article, however, as in Mn.E., is frequently omitted: **Brūtus wæs sē forma consul**, *Brutus was the first consul;* **Hēr ęndað sēo æreste bōc, ęnd onginneð sēo ōðer**, *Here the first book ends, and the second begins;* **ðȳ fīftan dæge**, *on the fifth day;* **on ðæm tēoðan gēare hiera gewinnes**, *in the tenth year of their strife;* **Hēo wæs twęlfte**, *She was twelfth;* **Sē wæs fēorða frǫm Agusto**, *He was fourth from Augustus.*

CHAPTER XVI.

Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions.

Adverbs.

93. (1) Adverbs are formed by adding **-e** or **-līce** to the corresponding adjectives: **sōð**, *true;* **sōðe** or **sōðlīce**, *truly;* **earmlīc**, *wretched;* **earmlīce**, *wretchedly;* **wīd**,

wide; **wīde**, *widely;* **micel**, *great;* **micle** (**micele**), *greatly, much.*

(2) The terminations **-e** and **-līce** are replaced in some adverbs by **-(l)unga** or **-(l)inga**: **eallunga**, *entirely;* **færinga**, *suddenly;* **grundlunga**, *from the ground, completely.*

Note 1. — In Mn.E. *headlong, darkling,* and *groveling,* originally adverbs, we have survivals of these endings.

(3) The genitive case is frequently used adverbially: **sūðeweardes**, *southwards;* **ealles**, *altogether, entirely;* **dæges**, *by day;* **nihtes**, *by night;* **ðæs**, *from that time, afterwards. Cf.* **hys** (= **his**) **weges** in **Ðonne rīdeð ælc hys weges**, *Then rides each his way.*

Note 2. — The adverbial genitive is abundantly preserved in Mn.E. *Always, crossways, sideways, needs* (= *necessarily*), *sometimes,* etc., are not plurals, but old genitive singulars. The same construction is seen in *of course, of a truth, of an evening, of old, of late,* and similar phrases.

(4) Dative and instrumental plurals may be used as adverbs: **hwīlum**, *at times, sometimes* [whilom]; **stundum** (**stund** = *period*), *from time to time;* **miclum**, *greatly.* Especially common is the suffix **-mælum** (**mæl** = *time, measure* [meal]), preserved adverbially in Mn.E. *piecemeal:* **dropmælum**, *drop by drop;* **styccemælum** (**stycce** = *piece*), *piecemeal, here and there.*

(5) The suffix **-an** usually denotes motion from:

hēr, *here.*	**hider**, *hither.*	**heonan**, *hence.*
ðær, *there.*	**ðider**, *thither.*	**ðǫnan**, *thence.*
hwær, *where?*	**hwider**, *whither?*	**hwǫnan**, *whence?*
		norðan, *from the north.*
		ēastan, *from the east.*
		hindan, *from behind.*
		feorran, *from far.*
		ūtan, *from without.*

(6) The adverb **rihte** (**riht**=*right, straight*) denotes *motion toward* in **norðrihte**, *northward, due north;* **ēastrihte**, *due east;* **sūðrihte**, *due south;* **westrihte**, *due west.*

Prepositions.

94. The nominative is the only case in O.E. that is never governed by a preposition. Of the other cases, the dative and accusative occur most frequently with prepositions.

(1) The prepositions that are most frequently found with the dative are:

æfter, *after.*
æt, *at.*
be (**bī**), *by, near, about.*
betwēonan (**betuh**), *between.*
būtan (**būton**), *except.*
for, *for.*
frǫm (**fram**), *from, by.*
mid, *with.*
of, *of, from.*
tō, *to.*
tōforan, *before.*
tōweard, *toward.*

(2) The following prepositions require the accusative:

geond, *throughout* [be-yond].
ofer, *over, upon.*
oð, *until, up to.*
ðurh, *through.*
ymbe, *about, around* [um-while, ember-days].

(3) The preposition **on** (rarely **in**), meaning *into*, is usually followed by the accusative; but meaning *in*, *on*, or *during*, it takes the dative or instrumental. The preposition **wið**, meaning *toward*, may be followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative; but meaning *against*, and implying *motion* or *hostility*, the accusative is more common.

(4) The following phrases are used prepositionally with the dative:

be norðan, *north of.*
be ēastan, *east of.*
be sūðan, *south of.*
be westan, *west of.*
tō ēacan, *in addition to.*
on emnlange (**efn-lang** = *evenly long*), *along.*
tō emnes, *along.*

(5) Prepositions regularly precede the noun or pronoun that they introduce; but by their adverbial nature they are sometimes drawn in front of the verb: **And him wæs mycel męnegu tō gegaderod**, *And there was gathered unto him a great multitude.* In relative clauses introduced by **ðe**, the preceding position is very common: **sēo scīr . . . ðe hē on būde**, *the district, . . . which he dwelt in* (= *which he in-habited*); **Hē wæs swȳðe spēdig man on ðǣm ǣhtum ðe hiera spēda on bēoð**, *He was a very rich man in those possessions which their riches consist in;* **nȳhst ðǣm tūne ðe sē dēada man on līð**, *nearest the town that the dead man lies in.*

Conjunctions.

95. (1) The most frequently occurring conjunctions are:

ac, *but.*
ǣr, *before, ere.*
būtan (**būton**), *except that, unless.*
ēac, *also* [eke].
for ðǣm, **for ðǣm ðe**, **for ðon**, **for ðon ðe**, } *because.*
for ðȳ, *therefore.*
gif, *if.*
hwæðer, *whether.*
ǫnd (**and**), *and.*
oððe, *or.*
ðæt, *that, so that.*
ðēah, *though, however.*

(2) The correlative conjunctions are:

ægðer ge . . . . . ge, *both . . . . . and.*
ægðer . . . . . oððer
oððe . . . . . oððe } *either . . . . . or.*

nē . . . . . **nē,**	*neither*	*nor.*
sam . . . . . **sam,**	*whether*	*or.*
swā . . . . . **swā**	*the*	*the.*
	as	*as.*
ðā . . . . . **ðā**	*when*	*then.*
ðonne . . . . . **ðonne**		

CHAPTER XVII.

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.

Adjectives.

96. (1) Adjectives are regularly compared by adding **-ra** for the comparative, and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
earm, *poor*	**earmra**	**earmost**
rīċe, *rich*	**rīcra**	**rīcost**
smæl, *narrow*	**smælra**	**smalost**
brād, *broad*	**brādra** (**brǣdra**)	**brādost**
swift, *swift*	**swiftra**	**swiftost**

(2) Forms with **i**-umlaut usually have superlative in **-est**:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
eald, *old*	**ieldra**	**ieldest**
lọng, *long*	**lęngra**	**lęngest**
strọng, *strong*	**stręngra**	**stręngest**
geong, *young*	**giengra**	**giengest**
hēah, *high*	**hīerra**	**hīehst**

(3) The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
gōd, *good*	**bętra**	**bętst**
lȳtel, *little, small*	**lǣssa**	**lǣst**
micel, *great, much*	**māra**	**mǣst**
yfel, *bad*	**wiersa**	**wierst**

(4) The positive is sometimes supplied by an adverb:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
feor, *far*	**fierra**	**fierrest**
nēah, *near*	**nēarra**	**nīehst**
ǣr, *before*	**ǣrra**, *former*	**ǣrest**, *first*

(5) The comparatives all follow the Weak Declension. The superlatives, when preceded by the definite article, are weak; but when used predicatively they are frequently strong: **sē lǣsta dǣl**, *the least part;* **Ðonne cymeð sē man sē ðæt swiftoste hors hafað tō ðǣm ǣrestan dǣle and tō ðǣm mǣstan**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse to the first part and to the largest.* But, **ðæt bȳne land is ēasteweard brādost** (not **brādoste**), *the cultivated land is broadest eastward;* **and (hit) bið ealra wyrta mǣst**, *and it is largest of all herbs;* **Ac hyra (= hiera) ār is mǣst on ðǣm gafole ðe ðā Finnas him gyldað**, *But their income is greatest in the tribute that the Fins pay them.*

(6) The comparative is usually followed by **ðonne** and the nominative case: **Sē hwæl bið micle lǣssa ðonne ōðre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales;* **Ðā wunda ðæs mōdes bēoð dīgelran ðonne ðā wunda ðæs līchaman**, *The wounds of the mind are more secret than the wounds of the body.*

But when **ðonne** is omitted, the comparative is followed by the dative: **Ūre Ālīesend, ðe māra is ǫnd**

mǣrra eallum gesceaftum, *Our Redeemer, who is greater and more glorious than all created things;* **nē ongeat hē nō hiene selfne bętran ōðrum gōdum mǫnnum,** *nor did he consider himself better than other good men.*

Adverbs.

97. (1) Adverbs are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
georne, *willingly*	**geornor**	**geornost**
swīðe, *very, severely*	**swīðor,** *more*	**swīðost,** *most, chiefly*
ǣr, *before*	**ǣror,** *formerly*	**ǣrest,** *first*
norð, *northwards*	**norðor**	**norðmest**[1]

(2) The comparatives of a few adverbs may be found by dropping **-ra** of the corresponding adjective form:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
lǫnge, *long*	**lęng**	**lęngest**
micle, *much*	**mā**	**mǣst**
wel, *well*	**bęt**	**bętst**

Expressions of Time.

98. (1) Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative case: **Ealle ðā hwīle ðe ðæt līc bið inne,** *All the time that the body is within;* **twēgen dagas,** *for two days;* **ealne weg,** *all the way, always.*

---

[1] This is really a double superlative, **m** being itself an old superlative suffix. *Cf.* Latin *opti-m-us.* In Mn.E. *northmost* and *hindmost*, *-m-est* has been confused with *-most*, with which etymologically it has nothing to do.

(2) Time when is more often expressed by the instrumental case when no preposition is used: **ðȳ ilcan dæge**, *the same day;* **ælce gēare**, *each year;* **ðȳ gēare**, *that year;* **ælce dæge**, *each day.*

(3) Time or space within which is expressed by **on** and the dative: **on sumera**, *in summer;* **on wintra**, *in winter;* **on fīf dagum**, *in five days;* **on fīf mīlum**, *in five miles;* **on ðissum gēare**, *in this year;* **on ðǣm tīman**, *in those times.* Sometimes by the genitive without a preceding preposition: **ðǣs gēares**, *in that year.*

99. Vocabulary.

ðæt gefylce [folc], *troop, division.*
ðæt lǫnd (land), *land.*
sēo mīl, *mile.*
ōðer . . . ōðer, *the one . . . the other; the former . . . the latter.*
sē sige, *victory.*
sige[1] **habban**, *to win (the) victory.*
sprecan, *to speak.*
ðæt swīn (swȳn), *swine, hog.*
wēste, *waste.*

100. Exercises.

I. 1. Hē hæfð ðrēo swīðe swift hors. 2. Ic hæbbe nigontīene scēap ǫnd mā ðonne twēntig swīna. 3. Sēo gōde cwēn cīest twā hund mǫnna. 4. Uton feohtan wið ðā Dęne mid ðrīm hunde scipa. 5. Ǫnd hīe wǣron on twǣm gefylcum: on ōðrum wæs[2] Bāchsęcg ǫnd Halfdęne ðā hæðnan cyningas, ǫnd on ōðrum wǣron ðā eorlas. 6. Ðū spricst sōðlīce. 7. Ðonne rīt ælc mǫn his weges. 8. Æfter mǫnigum dagum, hæfde Ælfred cyning[3] sige. 9. Ðis lǫnd is wēste styccemælum. 10. Ðēs feld is fīftiges mīla brād. 11. Æl-

[1] **Sige** usually, but not invariably, precedes **habban**.

[2] See p. 100, note on **gefeaht**.

[3] The proper noun comes first in appositive expressions: **Ælfred cyning, Sidroc eorl, Hēahmund bisceop.**

fred cyning hæfde mǫnige frīend, for ðǣm ðe hē wæs ǣgðer ge wīs ge gōd. 12. Ðā hwalas, ðe ðū ymbe spricst, sind micle lǣssan ōðrum hwalum. 13. Hēo is ieldre ðonne hiere swuster, ac mīn brōðor is ieldra ðonne hēo. 14. Wē cumað tō ðǣm tūne ǣlce gēare. 15. Ðā męn ðe ðā swiftostan hors hæfdon wæron mid ðǣm Dęnum fēower dagas.

II. 1. Our army (**werod**) was in two divisions: one was large, the other was small. 2. The richest men in the kingdom have more (**mā**) than thirty ships. 3. He was much wiser than his brother. 4. He fights against the Northumbrians with two ships. 5. After three years King Alfred gained the victory. 6. Whosoever chooses these gifts, chooses well. 7. This man's son is both wiser and better than his father. 8. When the king rides, then ride his thanes also. 9. The richest men are not always (**ā**) the wisest men.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Strong Verbs: Class I. (See § **17.**)

Syntax of Moods.

101. Of the three hundred simple verbs belonging to the O.E. Strong Conjugation, it is estimated [1] that seventy-eight have preserved their strong inflections in Mn.E., that eighty-eight have become weak, and that the remaining one hundred and thirty-four have entirely disappeared, their places being taken in most cases by verbs of Latin origin introduced through the Norman-French.

[1] Lounsbury, *English Language*, Part II, § 241.

NOTE.—Only the simple or primitive verbs, not the compound forms, are here taken into consideration. The proportionate loss, therefore, is really much greater. O.E. abounded in formative prefixes. "Thus from the Anglo-Saxon **flōwan**, *to flow*, ten new compounds were formed by the addition of various prefixes, of which ten, only one, **oferflōwan**, *to overflow*, survives with us. In a similar manner, from the verb **sittan**, *to sit*, thirteen new verbs were formed, of which not a single one is to be found to-day." Lounsbury, *ib.* Part I, p. 107.

102. Class I: The "Drive" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **ī, ā, i, i.**

INFINITIVE.	PRETERIT SING.	PRETERIT PLUR.	PAST PART.
Drīf-an	**drāf**	**drif-on**	**gedrif-en**, *to drive.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1.	Ic drīf-e	
2.	ðū drīf-st (drīf-est)	
3.	hē drīf-ð (drīf-eð)	
Plur. 1.	wē	drīf-að
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

PRETERIT.

Sing. 1.	Ic drāf	
2.	ðū drif-e	
3.	hē drāf	
Plur. 1.	wē	drif-on
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1.	Ic	drīf-e
2.	ðū	
3.	hē	
Plur. 1.	wē	drīf-en
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

PRETERIT.

Sing. 1.	Ic	drif-e
2.	ðū	
3.	hē	
Plur. 1.	wē	drif-en
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Imperative.

Sing. 2. drīf

Plur. 1. drīf-an

2. drīf-að

Infinitive.

drīf-an

Gerund.

tō drīf-anne (-enne)

Present Participle.

drīf-ende

Past Participle.

gedrif-en

Tense Formation of Strong Verbs.

103. (1) It will be seen from the conjugation of **drīfan** that the *present stem* in all strong verbs is used throughout the present indicative, the present subjunctive, the imperative, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle. More than half of the endings, therefore, of the Strong Conjugation are added directly to the present stem.

(2) That the *preterit singular stem* is used in only two forms of the verb, the 1st and 3d persons singular of the preterit indicative: **Ic drāf, hē drāf.**

(3) That the *preterit plural stem* is used in the preterit plural indicative, in the second person of the preterit singular indicative, and in the singular and plural of the preterit subjunctive.

(4) That the *stem of the past participle* (**gedrif-**) is used for no other form.

Syntax of the Verb.

104. The Indicative Mood[1] represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is used both in independent and in dependent clauses, its function in O.E. corresponding with its function in Mn.E.

105. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*.[2] It is of far more frequent occurrence in O.E. than in Mn.E.

---

[1] Usage sanctions *mood*, but the better spelling would be *mode*. It is from the Lat. *modus*, whereas *mood* (= *temper*) is O.E. *mōd*.

[2] Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar*, § 255.

1. When used in independent clauses it denotes desire, command, or entreaty, and usually precedes its subject: **Sīe ðīn nama gehālgod**, *Hallowed be Thy name;* **Ne swęrigen gē**, *Do not swear.*

2. In dependent clauses it denotes uncertainty, possibility, or mere futurity.[1] (*a*) Concessive clauses (introduced by **ðēah**, *though*) and (*b*) temporal clauses (introduced by **ǣr**, **ǣr ðǣm ðe**, *before*) are rarely found with any other mood than the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also regularly used in Alfredian prose (*c*) after verbs of saying, even when no suggestion of doubt or discredit attaches to the narration.[2] "Whether the statement refer to a fact or not, whether the subject-matter be vouched for by the reporter, as regards its objective reality and truth, the subjunctive does not tell. It simply represents a statement as reported"[3]: **ðēah man āsętte twēgen fǣtels full ealað oððe wæteres**, *though one set two vessels full of ale or water;* **ǣr ðǣm ðe hit eall forhęrgod wǣre**, *before it was all ravaged;* **Hē sǣde ðæt Norðmanna land wǣre swȳðe lang and swȳðe smæl**, *He said that the Norwegians' land was very long and very narrow.*

---

[1] Thus when Alfred writes that an event took place *before* the founding of Rome, he uses the subjunctive: **ǣr ðǣm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wǣre** = *before Rome were founded;* but, **æfter ðǣm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wæs** = *after Rome was founded.*

[2] "By the time of Ælfric, however, the levelling influence of the indicative [after verbs of saying] has made considerable progress." — Gorrell, *Indirect Discourse in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1895), p. 101.

[3] Hotz, *On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Anglo-Saxon* (Zürich, 1882).

106. The Imperative is the mood of command or intercession: **Iōhannes, cum tō mē,** *John, come to me;* **And forgyf ūs ūre gyltas,** *And forgive us our trespasses;* **Ne drīf ūs fram ðē,** *Do not drive us from thee.*

107. (1) The Infinitive and Participles are used chiefly in verb-phrases (§§ **138–141**); but apart from this function, the Infinitive, being a neuter noun, may serve as the subject or direct object of a verb. **Hātan** (*to command, bid*), **lǣtan** (*to let, permit*), and **onginnan** (*to begin*) are regularly followed by the Infinitive: **Hine rīdan lyste,** *To ride pleased him;* **Hēt ðā bǣre sęttan,** *He bade set down the bier;*[1] **Lǣtað ðā lȳtlingas tō mē cuman,** *Let the little ones come to me;* **ðā ongann hē sprecan,** *then began he to speak.*

(2) The Participles may be used independently in the dative absolute construction (an imitation of the Latin ablative absolute), usually for the expression of time:[2] **Him ðā gȳt sprecendum,** *While he was yet speaking;* **gefylledum dagum,** *the days having been fulfilled.*

108. The Gerund, or Gerundial Infinitive, is used:

(1) To express purpose: **Ūt ēode sē sāwere his sǣd tō sāwenne,** *Out went the sower his seed to sow.*

(2) To expand or determine the meaning of a noun or adjective: **Sȳmōn, ic hæbbe ðē tō sęcgenne sum ðing,** *Simon, I have something to say to thee;* **Hit is scǫndlīc ymb swelc tō sprecanne,** *It is shameful to speak about such things.*

---

[1] Not, *He commanded the bier to be set down.* The Mn.E. passive in such sentences is a loss both in force and directness.

[2] Callaway, *The Absolute Participle in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1889), p. 19.

(3) After **bēon (wesan)** to denote duty or necessity: **Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðis tō sprecanne,** *What more is there now to say about this?* **ðonne is tō geðęncenne hwæt Crīst self cwæð,** *then it behooves to bethink what Christ himself said.*

Note. — The Gerund is simply the dative case of the Infinitive after **tō**. It began very early to supplant the simple Infinitive; hence the use of *to* with the Infinitive in Mn.E. As late as the Elizabethan age the Gerund sometimes replaced the Infinitive even after the auxiliary verbs:

> "Some pagan shore,
> Where these two Christian armies *might combine*
> The blood of malice in a vein of league,
> And not *to spend* it so unneighbourly."
>
> — *King John*, V, 2, 39.

When *to* lost the meaning of purpose and came to be considered as a merely formal prefix, *for* was used to supplement the purpose element: *What went ye out for to see?*[1]

---

[1] This is not the place to discuss the Gerund in Mn.E., the so-called "infinitive in *-ing*." The whole subject has been befogged for the lack of an accepted nomenclature, one that shall do violence neither to grammar nor to history.

CHAPTER XIX.

Strong Verbs: Classes II and III.

109. Class II: The "Choose" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **ēo, ēa, u, o.**

Infinitive.[1]	Pret. Sing.	Pret. Plur.[2]	Past Part.[2]
cēos-an,	**cēas,**	**cur-on,**	**gecor-en,** *to choose,*

Indicative.

Present.

Sing. 1.	Ic cēos-e	
2.	ðū cīest (cēos-est)	
3.	hē cīest (cēos-eð)	
Plur. 1.	wē	cēos-að
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Preterit.

Sing. 1.	Ic cēas	
2.	ðū cur-e	
3.	hē cēas	
Plur. 1.	wē	cur-on
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Subjunctive.

Present.

Sing. 1.	Ic	cēos-e
2.	ðū	
3.	hē	
Plur. 1.	wē	cēos-en
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Preterit.

Sing. 1.	Ic	cur-e
2.	ðū	
3.	hē	
Plur. 1.	wē	cur-en
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Imperative.

Sing. 2. cēos

Plur. 1. cēos-aṅ

2. cēos-að

Infinitive.

cēos-an

Gerund.

tō cēos-anne (-enne)

Present Participle.

cēos-ende

Past Participle.

gecor-en

---

[1] A few verbs of Class II have **ū** instead of **ēo** in the infinitive:
brūcan, brēac, brucon, gebrocen, *to enjoy* [brook].
būgan, bēag, bugon, gebogen, *to bend, bow.*

[2] By a law known as Grammatical Change, final **ð, s,** and **h** of strong verbs generally become **d, r,** and **g,** respectively, in the preterit plural and past participle.

110. Class III: The "Bind" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: $\left\{\begin{matrix}\mathbf{i}\\\mathbf{e}\end{matrix}\right\}$, **a**, **u**, $\left\{\begin{matrix}\mathbf{u}\\\mathbf{o}\end{matrix}\right\}$.

The present stem ends in **m**, **n**, **l**, **r**, or **h**, + one or more consonants:

m:	**belimp-an,**	{**belǫmp** / **belamp**},	**belump-on,**	**belump-en,**	*to belong.*
n:	**bind-an,**	{**bǫnd** / **band**},	**bund-on,**	**gebund-en,**	*to bind.*
l:	**help-an,**	**healp,**	**hulp-on,**	**geholp-en,**	*to help.*
r:	**weorð-an,**	**wearð,**	**wurd-on,**	**geword-en,**	*to become.*
h:	**gefeoht-an,**	**gefeaht,**	**gefuht-on,**	**gefoht-en,**	*to fight.*

Note 1. — If the present stem ends in a nasal (**m**, **n**) + a consonant, the past participle retains the **u** of the pret. plur.; but if the present stem ends in a liquid (**l**, **r**) or **h**, + a consonant, the past participle has **o** instead of **u**.

Note 2. — Why do we not find ***halp**, ***warð**, and ***faht** in the pret. sing.? Because **a** before **l**, **r**, or **h**, + a consonant, underwent "breaking" to **ea**. Breaking also changes every **e** followed by **r** or **h**, + a consonant, to **eo**: **weorðan** (< ***werðan**), **feohtan** (< ***fehtan**).

111.

Indicative.		**Subjunctive.**	
Present.		Present.	
Sing. 1.	Ic bind-e	*Sing.* 1. Ic	bind-e
2.	ðū bintst (bind-est)	2. ðū	
3.	hē bint (bind-eð)	3. hē	
Plur. 1.	wē	*Plur.* 1. wē	bind-en
2.	gē bind-að	2. gē	
3.	hīe	3. hīe	
Preterit.		Preterit.	
Sing. 1.	Ic bǫnd	*Sing.* 1. Ic	bund-e
2.	ðū bund-e	2. ðū	
3.	hē bǫnd	3. hē	

Preterit.		Preterit.	
Plur. 1. wē	bund-on	*Plur.* 1. wē	bund-en
2. gē	bund-on	2. gē	bund-en
3. hīe	bund-on	3. hīe	bund-en

Imperative.	Infinitive.	Present Participle.
Sing. 2. bind	bind-an	bind-ende
Plur. 1. bind-an		
2. bind-að	**Gerund.**	**Past Participle.**
	tō bind-anne (-enne)	gebund-en

112. Vocabulary.

ðæt gefeoht, *fight, battle.*
sēo geręcednes, *narration* [**ręccan**].
ðæt gesceap, *creation* [**scieppan**].
sēo hęrgung (§ **39**, (3)), *harrying, plundering* [**hęrgian**].
sē medu (**medo**) (§ **51**), *mead.*
sēo meolc, *milk.*
sē middangeard, *world* [middle-yard].
sē munuc, *monk* [monachus].
sēo mȳre, *mare* [**mearh**].
hē sǣde, *he said.*
hīe sǣdon, *they said.*
sēo spēd, *riches* [speed].
spēdig, *rich, prosperous* [speedy].
sēo tīd, *time* [tide].
unspēdig, *poor.*
sē westanwind, *west-wind.*
ðæt wīn, *wine.*

ārīsan,	**ārās,**	**ārison,**	**ārisen,**	*to arise.*
bīdan,	**bād,**	**bidon,**	**gebiden,**	*to remain, expect* (with gen.)
drēogan,[1]	**drēag,**	**drugon,**	**gedrogen,**	*to endure, suffer.*
drincan,	**drǫnc,**	**druncon,**	**gedruncen,**	*to drink.*
findan,	**fǫnd,**	**fundon,**	**gefunden,**	*to find.*
geswīcan	**geswāc,**	**geswicon,**	**geswicen,**	*to cease, cease from* (with gen.)
iernan (**yrnan**),	**ǫrn,**	**urnon,**	**geurnen,**	*to run.*
onginnan,	**ongǫnn,**	**ongunnon,**	**ongunnen,**	*to begin.*
rīdan,	**rād,**	**ridon,**	**geriden,**	*to ride.*
singan,	**sǫng,**	**sungon,**	**gesungen,**	*to sing.*
wrītan,	**wrāt,**	**writon,**	**gewriten,**	*to write.*

[1] *Cf.* the Scotch "to *dree* one's weird" = *to endure one's fate.*

113. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Æfter ðissum wordum, sē munuc wrāt ealle ðā gerȩcednesse on ānre bēc. 2. Ðā eorlas ridon ūp ǣr ðǣm ðe ðā Dȩne ðæs gefeohtes geswicen. 3. Cædmon sȩng ǣrest be middangeardes gesceape. 4. Sē cyning ȩnd ðā rīcostan mȩn drincað mȳran meolc, ȩnd ðā unspēdigan drincað medu. 5. Ȩnd hē ārās ȩnd sē wind geswāc. 6. Hīe sǣdon ðæt hīe ðǣr westwindes biden. 7. Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðās ðing tō sprecanne? 8. Ðā sȩcgas ongunnon geswīcan ðǣre hȩrgunga. 9. Ðā bēag ðæt lȩnd ðǣr ēastryhte, oððe sēo sǣ in on ðæt lȩnd. 10. Ðās lȩnd belimpað tō ðǣm Ȩnglum. 11. Ðēah ðā Dȩne ealne dæg gefuhten, gīet hæfde Ælfred cyning sige. 12. Ȩnd ðæs (afterwards) ymbe ānne mōnað gefeaht Ælfred cyning wið ealne ðone hȩre æt Wiltūne.

II. 1. The most prosperous men drank mare's milk and wine, but the poor men drank mead. 2. I suffered many things before you began to help me (dat.). 3. About two days afterwards (**Ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas**), the plundering ceased. 4. The king said that he fought against all the army (**hęre**). 5. Although the Danes remained one month (§ **98**, (1)), they did not begin to fight. 6. These gifts belonged to my brother. 7. The earls were glad because their lord was (indicative) with them. 8. What did you find? 9. Then wrote he about (**be**) the wise man's deeds. 10. What more is there to endure?

CHAPTER XX.

Strong Verbs: Classes IV, V, VI, and VII. Contract Verbs.

[The student can now complete the conjugation for himself (§ 103). Only the principal parts will be given.]

114. **Class IV: The "Bear" Conjugation.**

Vowel Succession: **e, æ, ǣ, o.**

The present stem ends in **l, r,** or **m,** no consonant following:

l:	**hel-an,**	**hæl,**	**hǣl-on,**	**gehol-en,** *to conceal.*
r:	**ber-an,**	**bær,**	**bǣr-on,**	**gebor-en,** *to bear.*

The two following verbs are slightly irregular:

m:	**nim-an,**	**nōm (nam),**	**nōm-on (nām-on),**	**genum-en,** *to take.*
	cum-an,	**c(w)ōm,**	**c(w)ōm-on,**	**gecum-en,** *to come.*

115. **Class V: The "Give" Conjugation.**

Succession of Vowels: **e (ie), æ, ǣ, e.**

The present stem ends in a single consonant, never a liquid or nasal:

met-an,	**mæt,**	**mǣton,**	**gemet-en,**	*to measure, mete.*
gief-an,	**geaf,**	**gēaf-on,**	**gegief-en,**	*to give.*

Note 1. — The palatal consonants, **g, c,** and **sc,** convert a following **e** into **ie, æ** into **ea,** and **ǣ** into **ēa.** Hence **giefan** (<*gefan), **geaf** (<*gæf), **gēafon** (<*gǣfon), **gegiefen** (<*gegefen). This change is known as Palatalization. See § **8.**

Note 2. — The infinitives of the following important verbs are only apparently exceptional:

biddan,	**bæd,**	**bǣd-on,**	**gebed-en,**	*to ask for* [bid].
licgan,	**læg,**	**lǣg-on,**	**geleg-en,**	*to lie, extend.*
sittan,	**sæt,**	**sǣt-on,**	**geset-en,**	*to sit.*

The original **e** reappears in the participial stems. It was changed to **i** in the present stems on account of a former **-jan** in the infinitive (**bid-jan**, etc.). See § **61**. To the same cause is due the doubling of consonants in the infinitive. All simple consonants in O.E., with the exception of **r**, were doubled after a short vowel, when an original **j** followed.

116. Class VI: The "Shake" Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: **a**, **ō**, **ō**, **a**.

scac-an,	**scōc,**	**scōc-on,**	**gescac-en,**	*to shake.*
far-an,	**fōr,**	**fōr-on,**	**gefar-en,**	*to go* [fare].

117. Class VII: The "Fall" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: $\left.\begin{matrix}\bar{a}\\ \bar{æ}\end{matrix}\right\}$, **ē**, **ē**, $\left.\begin{matrix}\bar{a}\\ \bar{æ}\end{matrix}\right\}$; or $\left.\begin{matrix}\textbf{ea}\\ \bar{\textbf{e}}\textbf{a}\\ \bar{\textbf{o}}\end{matrix}\right\}$, **ēo**, **ēo**, $\left.\begin{matrix}\textbf{ea}\\ \bar{\textbf{e}}\textbf{a}\\ \bar{\textbf{o}}\end{matrix}\right\}$.

(1)	**hāt-an,**	**hēt,**	**hēt-on,**	**gehāt-en,**	*to call, name, command.*
	lǣt-an,	**lēt,**	**lēt-on,**	**gelǣt-en,**	*to let.*
(2)	**feall-an,**	**fēoll,**	**fēoll-on,**	**gefeall-en,**	*to fall.*
	heald-an,	**hēold,**	**hēold-on,**	**geheald-en,**	*to hold.*
	hēaw-an,	**hēow,**	**hēow-on,**	**gehēaw-en,**	*to hew.*
	grōw-an,	**grēow,**	**grēow-on,**	**gegrōw-en,**	*to grow.*

Note 1. — This class consists of the Reduplicating Verbs; that is, those verbs that originally formed their preterits not by internal vowel change (ablaut), but by prefixing to the present stem the initial consonant + **e** (*cf.* Gk. λέ-λοιπα and Lat. *dĕ-dī*). Contraction then took place between the syllabic prefix and the root, the fusion resulting in **ē** or **ēo**: ***he-hat** > **heht** > **hēt**.

Note 2. — A peculiar interest attaches to **hātan**: the forms **hātte** and **hātton** are the sole remains in O.E. of the original Germanic passive. They are used both as presents and as preterits: **hātte** = *I am* or *was called, he is* or *was called.* No other verb in O.E. could have a passive sense without calling in the aid of the verb *to be* (§ **141**).

Contract Verbs.

118. The few Contract Verbs found in O.E. do not constitute a new class; they fall under Classes I, II, V, VI, and VII, already treated. The present stem ended originally in **h**. This was lost before **-an** of the infinitive, contraction and compensatory lengthening being the result. The following are the most important of these verbs:

Classes.					
I.	**ðēon** (<***ðīhan**),	**ðāh,**	**ðig-on,**	{**geðig-en** / **geðung-en**},	*to thrive.*
II.	**tēon** (<***tēohan**),	**tēah,**	**tug-on,**	**getog-en,**	*to draw, go* [tug].
V.	**sēon** (<***sehwan**),	**seah,**	**sāw-on,**	**gesew-en,**	*to see.*
VI.	**slēan** (<***slahan**),	**slōh,**	**slōg-on,**	**geslæg-en,**	*to slay.*
VII.	**fōn** (<***fōhan**),	**fēng,**	**fēng-on,**	**gefǫng-en,**	*to seize* [fang].

119. The Present Indicative of these verbs runs as follows (see rules of **i**-umlaut, § **58**):

Sing.	1.	Ic ðēo	tēo	sēo	slēa	fō
	2.	ðū ðīhst	tīehst	siehst	sliehst	fēhst
	3.	hē ðīhð	tīehð	siehð	sliehð	fēhð
Plur.	1.	wē	ðēoð	tēoð	sēoð	slēað	fōð
	2.	gē					
	3.	hīe					

The other tenses and moods are regularly formed from the given stems.

120. Vocabulary.

sēo ǣht, *property, possession* [**āgan**].
aweg, *away* [**on weg**].
sēo fierd, *English army* [**faran**].
sē hęre, *Danish army* [**hęrgian**].
on gehwæðre hǫnd, *on both sides.*
sige niman (= **sige habban**), *to win (the) victory.*
sēo sprǣc, *speech, language.*

tō rīce fōn, *to come to the throne.*[1] | **sē weall**, *wall, rampart.*
ðæt wæl [Val-halla] | *slaughter,* | **ðæt wildor**, *wild beast, reindeer.*
sē wælsliht, | *carnage.* | **sē wīngeard**, *vineyard.*

ābrecan,[2] **ābræc, ābrǣcon, ābrocen**, *to break down.*
cweðan, cwæð, cwǣdon, gecweden, *to say* [quoth].
gesēon, geseah, gesāwon, gesewen, *to see.*
grōwan, grēow, grēowon, gegrōwen, *to grow.*
ofslēan, ofslōh, ofslōgon, ofslægen, *to slay.*
sprecan, spræc, sprǣcon, gesprecen, *to speak.*
stelan, stæl, stǣlon, gestolen, *to steal.*
stǫndan, stōd, stōdon, gestǫnden, *to stand.*
weaxan, wēox, wēoxon, geweaxen, *to grow, increase* [wax].

121. Exercises.

I. 1. Æfter ðǣm sōðlīce (indeed) ealle męn sprǣcon āne (one) sprǣce. 2. Ǫnd hē cwæð: "Ðis is ān folc, ǫnd ealle hīe sprecað āne sprǣce." 3. On sumum stōwum wīngeardas grōwað. 4. Hē hēt ðā nǣdran ofslēan. 5. Ðā Ęngle ābrǣcon ðone lǫngan weall, ǫnd sige nōmon. 6. Ǫnd ðæt sǣd grēow ǫnd wēox. 7. Ic ne geseah ðone mǫn sē ðe ðæs cnapan adesan stæl. 8. Hē wæs swȳðe spēdig man on ðǣm æhtum ðe hiera spēda on[3] bēoð, ðæt is, on wildrum. 9. Ǫnd ðǣr wearð (was) micel wælsliht on gehwæðre hǫnd. 10. Ǫnd æfter ðissum gefeohte, cōm Ælfred cyning mid his fierde, ǫnd gefeaht wið ealne ðone hęre, ǫnd sige nōm. 11. Ðēos burg hātte[4] Æscesdūn (Ashdown). 12. Ðǣre cwēne līc læg on ðǣm hūse. 13. Ǫnd sē dǣl ðe ðǣr aweg cōm wæs swȳðe lȳtel. 14. Ǫnd ðæs ðrēotīene dagas Æðered tō rīce fēng.

II. 1. The men stood in the ships and fought against the Danes. 2. Before the thanes came, the king rode away.

[1] Literally, *to take to (the) kingdom.* *Cf.* "Have you anything to take to?" (*Two Gentlemen of Verona*, IV, 1, 42).

[2] **Brecan** belongs properly in Class V, but it has been drawn into Class IV possibly through the influence of the **r** in the root.

[3] See § **94**, (5). [4] See § **117**, Note 2.

3. They said (**sǣdon**) that all the men spoke one language. 4. They bore the queen's body to Wilton. 5. Alfred gave many gifts to his army (dat. without **tō**) before he went away. 6. These men are called earls. 7. God sees all things. 8. The boy held the reindeer with (**mid**) his hands. 9. About six months afterwards, Alfred gained the victory, and came to the throne. 10. He said that there was very great slaughter on both sides.

CHAPTER XXI.

Weak Verbs (§ 18).

122. The verbs belonging to the Weak Conjugation are generally of more recent origin than the strong verbs, being frequently formed from the roots of strong verbs. The Weak Conjugation was the growing conjugation in O.E. as it is in Mn.E. We instinctively put our newly coined or borrowed words into this conjugation (*telegraphed*, *boycotted*); and children, by the analogy of weak verbs, say *runned* for *ran*, *seed* for *saw*, *teared* for *tore*, *drawed* for *drew*, and *growed* for *grew*. So, for example, when Latin *dictāre* and *breviāre* came into O.E., they came as weak verbs, **dihtian** and **brēfian**.

The Three Classes of Weak Verbs.

123. There is no difficulty in telling, from the infinitive alone, to which of the three classes a weak verb belongs. Class III has been so invaded by Class II

that but three important verbs remain to it: **habban**, *to have;* **libban**, *to live;* and **sęcgan**, *to say.* Distinction is to be made, therefore, only between Classes II and I. Class II contains the verbs with infinitive in **-ian** not preceded by **r**. Class I contains the remaining weak verbs; that is, those with infinitive in **-r-ian** and those with infinitive in **-an** (not **-ian**).

Class I.

124. The preterit singular and past participle of Class I end in **-ede** and **-ed**, or **-de** and **-ed** respectively.

Note. — The infinitives of this class ended originally in **-jan** (= **-ian**). This accounts for the prevalence of **i**-umlaut in these verbs, and also for the large number of short-voweled stems ending in a double consonant (§ **115**, Note 2). The weak verb is frequently the causative of the corresponding strong verb. In such cases, the root of the weak verb corresponds in form to the preterit singular of the strong verb: Mn.E. *drench* (= *to make drink*), *lay* (= *to make lie*), *rear* (= *to make rise*), and *set* (= *to make sit*), are the umlauted forms of **drǫnc** (preterit singular of **drincan**), **læg** (preterit singular of **licgan**), **rās** (preterit singular of **rīsan**), and **sæt** (preterit singular of **sittan**).

Preterit and Past Participle in *-ede* and *-ed.*

125. Verbs with infinitive in **-an** preceded by **ri-** or the double consonants **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, **cg** (= **gg**), add **-ede** for the preterit, and **-ed** for the past participle, the double consonant being always made single:

ri:	**nęri-an,**	**nęr-ede,**	**genęr-ed,**	*to save.*
mm:	**fręmm-an,**	**fręm-ede,**	**gefręm-ed,**	*to perform* [frame].
nn:	**ðęnn-an,**	**ðęn-ede,**	**geðęn-ed,**	*to extend.*
ss:	**cnyss-an,**	**cnys-ede,**	**gecnys-ed,**	*to beat.*

bb: **swębb-an**, **swęf-ede**, **geswęf-ed**, *to put to sleep.*
cg: **węcg-an**, **węg-ede**, **gewęg-ed**, *to agitate.*

Note. — **Lęcgan**, *to lay*, is the only one of these verbs that syncopates the **e**: **lęcgan**, **lęgde** (**lēde**), **gelęgd** (**gelēd**), instead of **lęgede**, **gelęged**.

Preterit and Past Participle in *-de* and *-ed.*

126. All the other verbs belonging to Class I. add **-de** for the preterit and **-ed** for the past participle. This division includes, therefore, all stems long by nature (§ **10**, (3), (*a*)):

dǣl-an,	**dǣl-de**,	**gedǣl-ed**,	*to deal out, divide* [**dǣl**].
dēm-an,	**dēm-de**,	**gedēm-ed**,	*to judge* [**dōm**].
grēt-an,	**grēt-te**,	**gegrēt-ed**,	*to greet.*
hīer-an,	**hīer-de**,	**gehīer-ed**,	*to hear.*
lǣd-an,	**lǣd-de**,	**gelǣd-ed**,	*to lead.*

Note 1. — A preceding voiceless consonant (§ **9**, Note) changes **-de** into **-te**: ***grēt-de** > **grēt-te**; ***mēt-de** > **mēt-te**; ***īec-de** > **īec-te.** Syncope and contraction are also frequent in the participles: **gegrēt-ed** > ***gegrēt-d** > **gegrēt(t)**; **gelǣd-ed** > **gelǣd(d)**.

Note 2. — **Būan**, *to dwell, cultivate*, has an admixture of strong forms in the past participle: **būan**, **būde**, **gebūd** (**bȳn**, **gebūn**). The present participle survives in Mn.E. *husband* = *house-dweller.*

127. It includes, also, all stems long by position (§ **10**, (3), (*b*)) except those in **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, and **cg** (§ **125**):

sęnd-an,	**sęnd-e**,	**gesęnd-ed**,	*to send.*
sętt-an,	**sęt-te**,	**geseęt-ed**,	*to set* [**sittan**].
sigl-an,	**sigl-de**,	**gesigl-ed**,	*to sail.*
spęnd-an,	**spęnd-e**,	**gespęnd-ed**,	*to spend.*
trędd-an,	**tręd-de**,	**getręd-ed**,	*to tread.*

Note. — The participles frequently undergo syncope and contraction: **gesęnded** > **gesęnd**; **geseęted** > **geseęt(t)**; **gespęnded** > **gespęnd**; **getręded** > **getręd(d)**.

Irregular Verbs of Class I.

128. There are about twenty verbs belonging to Class I that are irregular in having no umlaut in the preterit and past participle. The preterit ends in **-de**, the past participle in **-d**; but, through the influence of a preceding voiceless consonant (§ **9**, Note), **-ed** is generally unvoiced to **-te**, and **-d** to **-t**. The most important of these verbs are as follows:

bring-an,	**brōh-te,**	**gebrōh-t,**	*to bring.*
byc-gan,	**boh-te,**	**geboh-t,**	*to buy.*
sēc-an,	**sōh-te,**	**gesōh-t,**	*to seek.*
sęll-an,	**seal-de,**	**geseal-d,**	*to give, sell* [hand-sel].
tǣc-an,	**tǣh-te,**	**getǣh-t,**	*to teach.*
tęll-an,	**teal-de,**	**geteal-d,**	*to count* [tell].
ðęnc-an,	**ðōh-te,**	**geðōh-t,**	*to think.*
ðync-an,	**ðūh-te,**	**geðūh-t,**	*to seem* [methinks].
wyrc-an,	**worh-te,**	**geworh-t,**	*to work.*

Note. — Such of these verbs as have stems in **c** or **g** are frequently written with an inserted **e**: **bycgean, sēcean, tǣcean,** etc. This **e** indicates that **c** and **g** have palatal value; that is, are to be followed with a vanishing **y**-sound. In such cases, O.E. **c** usually passes into Mn.E. *ch*: **tǣc(e)an** > *to teach;* **rǣc(e)an** > *to reach;* **stręcc(e)an** > *to stretch.* **Sēc(e)an** gives *beseech* as well as *seek.* See § **8.**

Conjugation of Class I.

129. Paradigms of **nęrian,** *to save;* **fręmman,** *to perform;* **dǣlan,** *to divide:*

Indicative.

Present.

Sing. 1.	Ic nęrie		fręmme	dǣle
2.	ðū nęrest		fręmest	dǣlst
3.	hē nęreð		fręmeð	dǣlð
Plur. 1.	wē	nęriað	fręmmað	dǣlað
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Preterit.

Sing. 1.	Ic	nęrede	fręmede	dǣlde
2.	ðū	nęredest	fręmedest	dǣldest
3.	hē	nęrede	fręmede	dǣlde
Plur. 1.	wē	nęredon	fręmedon	dǣldon
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Subjunctive.

Present.

Sing. 1.	Ic	nęrie	fręmme	dǣle
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
Plur. 1.	wē	nęrien	fręmmen	dǣlen
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Preterit.

Sing. 1.	Ic	nęrede	fręmede	dǣlde
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
Plur. 1.	wē	nęreden	fręmeden	dǣlden
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Imperative.

Sing. 2.	nęre	fręme	dǣl
Plur. 1.	nęrian	fręmman	dǣlan
2.	nęriað	fręmmað	dǣlað

Infinitive.

nęrian	fręmman	dǣlan

Gerund.

tō nęrianne (-enne)	tō fręmmanne (-enne)	tō dǣlanne (-enne)

Present Participle.

nęriende	fręmmende	dǣlende

Past Participle.

genęred	gefręmed	gedǣled

Note. — The endings of the preterit present no difficulties; in the 2d and 3d singular present, however, the student will observe (*a*) that double consonants in the stem are made single: **frȩmest, frȩmeð** (not ***frȩmmest, *frȩmmeð**); **ðȩnest, ðȩneð**; **sętest** (**sętst**), **sęteð** (**sętt**); **fylst, fylð**, from **fyllan**, *to fill;* (*b*) that syncope is the rule in stems long by nature: **dǣlst** (< **dǣlest**), **dǣlð** (< **dǣleð**); **dēmst** (< **dēmest**), **dēmð** (< **dēmeð**); **hīerst** (< **hīerest**), **hīerð** (< **hīereð**). Double consonants are also made single in the imperative 2d singular and in the past participle. Stems long by nature take no final **-e** in the imperative: **dǣl, hīer, dēm.**

Class II.

130. The infinitive of verbs belonging to this class ends in **-ian** (not **-r-ian**), the preterit singular in **-ode**, the past participle in **-od**. The preterit plural usually has **-edon**, however, instead of **-odon**:

eard-ian	**eard-ode,**	**geeard-od,**	*to dwell* [**eorðe**].
luf-ian,	**luf-ode,**	**geluf-od,**	*to love* [**lufu**].
rīcs-ian,	**rīcs-ode,**	**gerīcs-od,**	*to rule* [**rīce**].
sealf-ian,	**sealf-ode,**	**gesealf-od,**	*to anoint* [salve].
segl-ian,	**segl-ode,**	**gesegl-od,**	*to sail* [**segel**].

Note. — These verbs have no trace of original umlaut, since their **-ian** was once **-ōjan.** Hence, the vowel of the stem was shielded from the influence of the **j** (= **i**) by the interposition of **ō.**

Conjugation of Class II.

131. Paradigm of **lufian,** *to love:*

Indicative.

Present.

Sing. 1.	Ic	lufie
2.	ðū	lufast
3.	hē	lufað
Plur. 1.	wē	lufiað
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

Subjunctive.

Present.

Sing. 1.	Ic	lufie
2.	ðū	
3.	hē	
Plur. 1.	wē	lufien
2.	gē	
3.	hīe	

	Preterit.		Preterit.
Sing. 1.	Ic lufode	*Sing.* 1.	Ic }
2.	ðū lufodest	2.	ðū } lufode
3.	hē lufode	3.	hē }
Plur. 1.	wē }	*Plur.* 1.	wē }
2.	gē } lufedon (-odon)	2.	gē } lufeden (-oden)
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }

Imperative.		Infinitive.	Present Participle.
Sing. 2.	lufa	lufian	lufiende
Plur. 1.	lufian		
2.	lufiað	**Gerund.**	**Past Participle.**
		tō lufianne (-enne)	gelufod

Note. 1. — The **-ie** (**-ien**) occurring in the present must be pronounced as a dissyllable. The **y**-sound thus interposed between the **i** and **e** is frequently indicated by the letter **g**: **lufie**, or **lufige**; **lufien**, or **lufigen**. So also for **ia**: **lufiað**, or **lufigað**; **lufian**, or **lufig(e)an**.

Note 2. — In the preterit singular, **-ade**, **-ude**, and **-ede** are not infrequent for **-ode**.

Class III.

132. The few verbs belonging here show a blending of Classes I and II. Like certain verbs of Class I (§ **128**), the preterit and past participle are formed by adding **-de** and **-d**; like Class II, the 2d and 3d present indicative singular end in **-ast** and **-að**, the imperative 2d singular in **-a**:

habb-an,	**hæf-de**	**gehæf-d,**	*to have.*
libb-an,	**lif-de**	**gelif-d,**	*to live.*
sęcg-an	**sǣd-e** (**sæg-de**),	**gesǣd** (**gesæg-d**),	*to say.*

Conjugation of Class III.

133. Paradigms of **habban**, *to have;* **libban**, *to live;* **sęcgan**, *to say.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1.	Ic hæbbe		libbe	sęcge
2.	ðū hæfst (hafast)		lifast	sægst (sagast)
3.	hē hæfð (hafað)		lifað	sægð (sagað)
Plur. 1.	wē	habbað	libbað	sęcgað
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

PRETERIT.

Sing. 1.	Ic hæfde		lifde	sǣde
2.	ðū hæfdest		lifdest	sǣdest
3.	hē hæfde		lifde	sǣde
Plur. 1.	wē	hæfdon	lifdon	sǣdon
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1.	Ic	hæbbe	libbe	sęcge
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
Plur. 1.	wē	hæbben	libben	sęcgen
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

PRETERIT.

Sing. 1.	Ic	hæfde	lifde	sǣde
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
Plur. 1.	wē	hæfden	lifden	sǣden
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Imperative.

Sing. 2.	hafa	lifa	saga
Plur. 1.	habban	libban	sęcgan
2.	habbað	libbað	sęcgað

Infinitive.

habban	libban	sęcgan

Gerund.

tō habbanne (-enne)	tō libbanne (-enne)	tō sęcganne (-enne)

Present Participle.

hæbbende	libbende	sęcgende

Past Participle.

gehæfd	gelifd	gesǣd

CHAPTER XXII.

Remaining Verbs; Verb-Phrases with **habban**, **bēon**, and **weorðan**.

Anomalous Verbs. (See § **19**.)

134. These are:

bēon (**wesan**),	**wæs**,	**wǣron**,	——,	*to be.*
willan,	**wolde**,	**woldon**,	——,	*to will, intend.*
dōn,	**dyde**,	**dydon**,	**gedōn**,	*to do, cause.*
gān,	**ēode**,	**ēodon**,	**gegān**,	*to go.*

Note. — In the original Indo-Germanic language, the first person of the present indicative singular ended in (1) **ō** or (2) **mi**. *Cf.* Gk. λύ-ω, εἰ-μί, Lat. *am-ō*, *su-m*. The Strong and Weak Conjugations of O.E. are survivals of the **ō**-class. The four Anomalous Verbs mentioned above are the sole remains in O.E. of the **mi**-class. Note the surviving **m** in **eom** *I am*, and **dōm** *I do* (Northumbrian form). These **mi**-verbs are sometimes called non-Thematic to distinguish them from the Thematic or **ō**-verbs.

Conjugation of Anomalous Verbs.

135. Only the present indicative and subjunctive are at all irregular:

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1.	Ic eom (bēom)		wille	dō	gā
2.	ðū eart (bist)		wilt	dēst	gǣst
3.	hē is (bið)		wille	dēð	gǣð
Plur. 1.	wē	sind(on)	willað	dōð	gāð
2.	gē				
3.	hīe				

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1.	Ic	sīe	wille	dō	gā
2.	ðū				
3.	hē				
Plur. 1.	wē	sīen	willen	dōn	gān
2.	gē				
3.	hīe				

NOTE. — The preterit subjunctive of **bēon** is formed, of course, not from **wæs**, but from **wǣron**. See § **103**, (3).

Preterit-Present Verbs. (See § **19**.)

136. These verbs are called Preterit-Present because the present tense (indicative and subjunctive) of each of them is, in form, a strong preterit, the old present having been displaced by the new. They all have weak preterits. Most of the Mn.E. Auxiliary Verbs belong to this class.

witan,	**wiste, wisse,**	**wiston,**	**gewiten,**	*to know* [to wit, wot].
āgan,	**āhte,**	**āhton,**	**āgen** (adj.),	*to possess* [owe].
cunnan,	**cūðe,**	**cūðon,**	**gecunnen, cūð** (adj.),	*to know, can* [uncouth, cunning].

durran,	**dorste,**	**dorston,**	——	*to dare.*
sculan,	**sceolde,**	**sceoldon,**	——	*shall.*
magan,	**meahte,** / **mihte,**	**meahton,** / **mihton,**	——	*to be able, may.*
mōtan,	**mōste,**	**mōston,**	——	*may, must.*

Note. — The change in meaning from preterit to present, with retention of the preterit form, is not uncommon in other languages. Several examples are found in Latin and Greek (cf. *nōvi* and *οἶδα*, *I know*). Mn.E. has gone further still: **āhte** and **mōste**, which had already suffered the loss of their old preterits (**āh, mōt**), have been forced back again into the present (*ought, must*). Having exhausted, therefore, the only means of preterit formation known to Germanic, the strong and the weak, it is not likely that either *ought* or *must* will ever develop distinct preterit forms.

Conjugation of Preterit-Present Verbs.

137. The irregularities occur in the present indicative and subjunctive:

Indicative.

Present.

Sing. 1. Ic wāt	āh	cǫn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt
2. ðū wāst	āhst	cǫnst(canst)	dearst	scealt	meaht	mōst
3. hē wāt	āh	cǫn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt
Plur. 1. wē, 2. gē, 3. hīe	witon	āgon	cunnon	durron	sculon	magon	mōton

Subjunctive.

Present.

Sing. 1. Ic, 2. ðū, 3. hē	wite	āge	cunne	durre	scule(scyle)	mæge	mōte
Plur. 1. wē, 2. gē, 3. hīe	witen	āgen	cunnen	durren	sculen(scylen)	mægen	mōten

Note 1. — **Willan** and **sculan** do not often connote simple futurity in Early West Saxon, yet they were fast drifting that way.

The Mn.E. use of *shall* only with the 1st person and *will* only with the 2d and 3d, to express simple futurity, was wholly unknown even in Shakespeare's day. The elaborate distinctions drawn between these words by modern grammarians are not only cumbersome and foreign to the genius of English, but equally lacking in psychological basis.

Note 2. — **Sculan** originally implied the idea of (1) *duty*, or *compulsion* (=*ought to*, or *must*), and this conception lurks with more or less prominence in almost every function of **sculan** in O.E.: **Dryhten bebēad Moyse hū hē sceolde beran ðā earce,** *The Lord instructed Moses how he ought to bear the ark;* **Ælc mann sceal be his andgietes mǣðe . . . sprecan ðæt he spricð, and dōn ðæt ðæt hē dēð,** *Every man must, according to the measure of his intelligence, speak what he speaks, and do what he does.* Its next most frequent use is to express (2) *custom*, the transition from the obligatory to the customary being an easy one: **Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fiftȳne mearðes fell,** *The man of highest rank pays fifteen marten skins.*

Note 3. — **Willan** expressed originally (1) *pure volition*, and this is its most frequent use in O.E. It may occur without the infinitive: **Nylle ic ðæs synfullan dēað, ac ic wille ðæt hē gecyrre and lybbe,** *I do not desire the sinner's death, but I desire that he return and live.* The wish being father to the intention, **willan** soon came to express (2) *purpose:* **Hē sǣde ðæt hē at sumum cirre wolde fandian hū longe ðæt land norðryhte lǣge,** *He said that he intended, at some time, to investigate how far that land extended northward.*

Verb-Phrases with *habban, bēon* (*wesan*), and *weorðan.*

Verb-Phrases in the Active Voice.

138. The present and preterit of **habban**, combined with a past participle, are used in O.E., as in Mn.E., to form the present perfect and past perfect tenses:

	Present Perfect.	Past Perfect.
Sing. 1.	Ic hæbbe gedrifen	Ic hæfde gedrifen
2.	ðū hæfst gedrifen	ðū hæfdest gedrifen
3.	hē hæfð gedrifen	hē hæfde gedrifen

Present Perfect.			Past Perfect.		
Plur. 1. wē	habbað gedrifen		*Plur.* 1. wē	hæfdon gedrifen	
2. gē			2. gē		
3. hīe			3. hīe		

The past participle is not usually inflected to agree with the direct object: **Norðymbre ϱnd Ēastęngle hæfdon Ælfrede cyninge āðas geseald** (not **gesealde**, § **82**), *The Northumbrians and East Anglians had given king Alfred oaths;* **ϱnd hæfdon miclne dǣl ðāra horsa freten** (not **fretenne**), *and (they) had devoured a large part of the horses.*

Note. — Many sentences might be quoted in which the participle does agree with the direct object, but there seems to be no clear line of demarcation between them and the sentences just cited. Originally, the participle expressed a *resultant state*, and belonged in sense more to the object than to **habban**; but in Early West Saxon **habban** had already, in the majority of cases, become a pure auxiliary when used with the past participle. This is conclusively proved by the use of **habban** with intransitive verbs. In such a clause, therefore, as **oð ðæt hīe hine ofslægenne hæfdon**, there is no occasion to translate *until they had him slain* (= *resultant state*); the agreement here is more probably due to the proximity of **ofslægenne** to **hine**. So also **ac hī hæfdon þā hiera stemn gesętenne**, *but they had already served out (sat out) their military term.*

139. If the verb is intransitive, and denotes *a change of condition, a departure or arrival*, **bēon** (**wesan**) usually replaces **habban**. The past participle, in such cases, partakes of the nature of an adjective, and generally agrees with the subject: **Mīne welan þe ic īo hæfde syndon ealle gewitene ϱnd gedrorene**, *My possessions which I once had are all departed and fallen away;* **wǣron þā męn uppe on lϱnde of āgāne**, *the men had gone up ashore;* **ϱnd þā ōþre wǣron hungre ācwolen**, *and the*

others had perished of hunger; **ǫnd ēac sē micla hęre wæs þā þǣr tō cumen**, *and also the large army had then arrived there.*

140. A progressive present and preterit (not always, however, with distinctively progressive meanings) are formed by combining a present participle with the present and preterit of **bēon (wesan)**. The participle remains uninflected: **ǫnd hīe alle on ðone cyning wǣrun feohtende**, *and they all were fighting against the king;* **Symle hē bið lōciende, nē slǣpð hē nǣfre**, *He is always looking, nor does He ever sleep.*

Note. — In most sentences of this sort, the subject is masculine (singular or plural); hence no inference can be made as to agreement, since **-e** is the participial ending for both numbers of the nominative masculine (§ **82**). By analogy, therefore, the other genders usually conform in inflection to the masculine: **wǣron þā ealle þā dēoflu clypigende ānre stefne**, *then were all the devils crying with one voice.*

Verb-Phrases in the Passive Voice.

141. Passive constructions are formed by combining **bēon (wesan)** or **weorðan** with a past participle. The participle agrees regularly with the subject: **hīe wǣron benumene ǣgðer ge þæs cēapes ge þæs cornes**, *they were deprived both of the cattle and the corn;* **hī bēoð āblęnde mid ðǣm þīostrum heora scylda**, *they are blinded with the darkness of their sins;* **and sē wælhrēowa Domiciānus on ðām ylcan gēare wearð ācweald**, *and the murderous Domitian was killed in the same year;* **ǫnd Æþelwulf aldormǫn wearð ofslægen**, *and Æthelwulf, alderman, was slain.*

Note 1. — To express agency, Mn.E. employs *by*, rarely *of;* M.E. *of*, rarely *by;* O.E. **frǫm (fram)**, rarely **of**: **Sē ðe Godes bebodu**

ne gecnǣwð, ne bið hē oncnāwen frǫm Gode, *He who does not recognize God's commands, will not be recognized by God;* **Betwux þǣm wearð ofslagen Ēadwine . . . fram Brytta cyninge**, *Meanwhile, Edwin was slain by the king of the Britons.*

Note 2. — O.E. had no progressive forms for the passive, and could not, therefore, distinguish between *He is being wounded* and *He is wounded.* It was not until more than a hundred years after Shakespeare's death that *being* assumed this function. **Weorðan**, which originally denoted *a passage from one state to another*, was ultimately driven out by **bēon** (**wesan**), and survives now only in *Woe worth* (= *be to*).

142. Vocabulary.

ðā Beormas, *Permians.*
ðā Dęniscan, *the Danish (men), Danes.*
ðā Finnas, *Fins.*
ðæt gewald, *control* [**wealdan**].
sēo sǣ, *sea.*
sēo scīr, *shire, district.*
sēo wælstōw, *battle-field.*
āgan wælstōwe gewald, *to maintain possession of the battle-field.*
sē wealdend, *ruler, wielder.*

geflīeman,	**geflīemde,**	**geflīemed,**	*to put to flight.*
gestaðelian,	**gestaðelode,**	**gestaðelod,**	*to establish, restore.*
gewissian,	**gewissode,**	**gewissod,**	*to guide, direct.*
wīcian,	**wīcode,**	**gewīcod,**	*to dwell* [**wīc** = village].

143. Exercises.

I. 1. Ǫnd ðǣr wæs micel wæl geslægen on gehwæþre hǫnd, ǫnd Æþelwulf ealdormǫn wearþ ofslægen; ǫnd þā Dęniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald. 2. Ǫnd þæs ymb ānne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning wiþ ealne þone hęre, ond hine geflīemde. 3. Hē sǣde þēah þæt þæt land sīe swīþe lang norþ þǫnan. 4. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīþe wel gebūd (§ **126**, Note 2) hiera land. 5. Ohthęre sǣde þæt sēo scīr hātte (§ **117**, Note 2) Hālgoland, þe hē on (§ **94**, (5)) būde. 6. Þā Finnas wīcedon be þǣre sǣ. 7. Dryhten, ælmihtiga (§ **78**, Note) God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde

ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse ðæt ðū mē gewissie tō ðīnum willan; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe. 8. Þā sceolde hē ðǣr būan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðǣm þæt land bēag þǣr sūðryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē nysse hwæðer. 9. For ðȳ, mē ðyncð bętre, gif ēow swā ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac ðās bēc on ðæt geðēode węnden ðe wē ealle gecnāwan mægen.

II. 1. When the king heard that, he went (= then went he) westward with his army to Ashdown. 2. Lovest thou me more than these? 3. The men said that the shire which they lived in was called Halgoland. 4. All things were made (**wyrcan**) by God. 5. They were fighting for two days with (= against) the Danes. 6. King Alfred fought with the Danes, and gained the victory; but the Danes retained possession of the battle-field. 7. These men dwelt in England before they came hither. 8. I have not seen the book of (**ymbe**) which you speak (**sprecan**).

PART III.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

PROSE.

Introductory.

I. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

This famous work, a series of progressive annals by unknown hands, embraces a period extending from Cæsar's invasion of England to 1154. It is not known when or where these annals began to be recorded in English.

"The annals from the year 866 — that of Ethelred's ascent of the throne — to the year 887 seem to be the work of one mind. Not a single year is passed over, and to several is granted considerable space, especially to the years 871, 878, and 885. The whole has gained a certain roundness and fulness, because the events — nearly all of them episodes in the ever-recurring conflict with the Danes — are taken in their connection, and the thread dropped in one year is resumed in the next. Not only is the style in itself concise; it has a sort of nervous severity and pithy rigor. The construction is often antiquated, and suggests at times the freedom of poetry; though this purely historical prose is far removed from poetry in profusion of language." (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.)

II. The Translations of Alfred.

Alfred's reign (871–901) may be divided into four periods. The *first*, the period of Danish invasion, extends from 871 to

881; the *second*, the period of comparative quiet, from 881 to 893; the *third*, the period of renewed strife (beginning with the incursions of Hasting), from 893 to 897; the *fourth*, the period of peace, from 897 to 901. His literary work probably falls in the second period.*

The works translated by Alfred from Latin into the vernacular were (1) *Consolation of Philosophy* (*De Consolatione Philosophiae*) by Boëthius (475–525), (2) *Compendious History of the World* (*Historiarum Libri VII*) by Orosius (c. 418), (3) *Ecclesiastical History of the English* (*Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*) by Bede (672–735), and (4) *Pastoral Care* (*De Cura Pastorali*) by Pope Gregory the Great (540–604).

The chronological sequence of these works is wholly unknown. That given is supported by Turner, Arend, Morley, Grein, and Pauli. Wülker argues for an exact reversal of this order. According to Ten Brink, the order was more probably (1) *Orosius*, (2) *Bede*, (3) *Boëthius*, and (4) *Pastoral Care*. The most recent contribution to the subject is from Wülfing, who contends for (1) *Bede*, (2) *Orosius*, (3) *Pastoral Care*, and (4) *Boëthius*.

I. THE BATTLE OF ASHDOWN.

[From the *Chronicle*, Parker MS. The event and date are significant. The Danes had for the first time invaded Wessex. Alfred's older brother, Ethelred, was king; but to Alfred belongs the glory of the victory at Ashdown (Berkshire). Asser (*Life of Alfred*) tells us that for a long time Ethelred remained praying in his tent, while Alfred and his followers went forth "like a wild boar against the hounds."]

1 871. Hēr cuōm[1] sē hęre tō Rēadingum on Westseaxe,
2 ǫnd þæs ymb iii niht ridon ii eorlas ūp. Þā gemētte hīe

* There is something inexpressibly touching in this clause from the great king's pen: gif wē ðā stilnesse habbaþ. He is speaking of how much he hopes to do, by his translations, for the enlightenment of his people.

1 Æþelwulf aldorman[2] on Ęnglafelda, ǫnd him þǣr wiþ ge-
2 feaht, ǫnd sige nam. Þæs ymb iiii niht Æþered cyning
3 ǫnd Ælfred his brōþur[3] þǣr micle fierd tō Rēadingum
4 gelǣddon, ǫnd wiþ þone hęre gefuhton; ǫnd þǣr wæs
5 micel wæl geslægen on gehwæþre hǫnd, ǫnd Æþelwulf
6 aldormǫn wearþ ofslægen; ǫnd þā Dęniscan āhton wæl-
7 stōwe gewald.

8 Ǫnd þæs ymb iiii niht gefeaht Æþered cyning ǫnd
9 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ alne[4] þone hęre on Æscesdūne.
10 Ǫnd hīe wǣrun[5] on twǣm gefylcum: on ōþrum wæs
11 Bāchsęcg ǫnd Halfdęne þā hæþnan cyningas, ǫnd on
12 ōþrum wǣron þā eorlas. Ǫnd þā gefeaht sē cyning
13 Æþered wiþ þāra cyninga getruman, ǫnd þǣr wearþ sē
14 cyning Bāgsęcg ofslægen; ǫnd Ælfred his brōþur wiþ
15 þāra eorla getruman, ǫnd þǣr wearþ Sidroc eorl ofslægen
16 sē alda,[6] ǫnd Sidroc eorl sē gioncga,[7] ǫnd Ōsbearn eorl,
17 ǫnd Frēna eorl, ǫnd Hareld eorl; ǫnd þā hęrgas[8] bēgen
18 geflīemde, ǫnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra, ǫnd onfeohtende
19 wǣron oþ niht.

20 Ǫnd þæs ymb xiiii niht gefeaht Æþered cyning ǫnd
21 Ælfred his brōður wiþ þone hęre æt Basengum, ǫnd þǣr
22 þā Dęniscan sige nāmon.

23 Ǫnd þæs ymb ii mōnaþ gefeaht Æþered cyning ǫnd
24 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ þone hęre æt Męretūne, ǫnd hīe
25 wǣrun on tuǣm[9] gefylcium, ǫnd hīe būtū geflīemdon, ǫnd
26 lǫnge on dæg sige āhton; ǫnd þǣr wearþ micel wælsliht
27 on gehwæþere hǫnd; ǫnd þā Dęniscan āhton wælstōwe

8. **gefeaht**. Notice that the singular is used. This is the more common construction in O.E. when a compound subject, composed of singular members, follows its predicate. Cf. *For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory.* See also p. 107, note on **wæs**.

18. **ǫnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra**, *and there were many thousands of slain* (§ **91**).

gewald; ǫnd þǣr wearþ Hēahmund bisceop ofslægen, ǫnd fela gōdra mǫnna. Ǫnd æfter þissum gefeohte cuōm[1] micel sumorlida.

Ǫnd þæs ofer Ēastron gefōr Æþered cyning; ǫnd hē rīcsode v gēar; ǫnd his līc līþ æt Wīnburnan.

Þā fēng Ælfred Æþelwulfing his brōþur tō Wesseaxna rīce. Ǫnd þæs ymb ānne mōnaþ gefealht Ælfred cyning wiþ alne[4] þone hęre lȳtle werede[10] æt Wiltūne, ǫnd hine lǫnge on dæg geflīemde, ǫnd þā Dęniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald.

Ǫnd þæs gēares wurdon viiii folcgefeoht gefohten wiþ þone hęre on þȳ cynerīce be sūþan Tęmese, būtan þām þe him Ælfred þæs cyninges brōþur ǫnd ānlīpig aldormǫn[2] ǫnd cyninges þegnas oft rāde onridon þe mǫn nā ne rīmde; ǫnd þæs gēares wǣrun[5] ofslægene viiii eorlas ǫnd ān cyning. Ǫnd þȳ gēare nāmon Westseaxe friþ wiþ þone hęre.

Consult Glossary and Paradigms under Forms given below.

No note is made of such variants as **y** (**ȳ**) or **i** (**ī**) for **ie** (**īe**). See Glossary under **ie** (**īe**); occurrences, also, of **and** for **ǫnd**, **land** for **lǫnd**, are found on almost every page of Early West Saxon. Such words should be sought for under the more common forms, **ǫnd**, **lǫnd**.

[1] = cwōm.
[2] = ealdormǫn.
[3] = brōþor.
[4] = ealne.
[5] = wǣron.
[6] = ealda.
[7] = geonga.
[8] = hęras.
[9] = twǣm.
[10] = werode.

II. A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

[With this characteristic prayer, Alfred concludes his translation of Boëthius's *Consolation of Philosophy*. Unfortunately, the only extant MS. (Bodleian 180) is Late West Saxon. I follow, therefore, Prof. A. S. Cook's normalization on an Early West Saxon basis. See Cook's *First Book in Old English*, p. 163.]

12. **būtan þām þe**, etc., *besides which, Alfred . . . made raids against them* (**him**), *which were not counted.* See § **70**, Note.

Dryhten, ælmihtiga God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse, and for ðǣre hālgan rōde tācne, and for Sanctæ Marian mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaeles gehīersumnesse, and for ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan and hiera earnungum, ðæt ðū mē gewissie bęt ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe, bęt ðonne ic self cunne; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wiþ ðæs dēofles costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and ǣlce unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wiþ mīnum wiðerwinnum, gesewenlīcum and ungesewenlīcum; and tǣc mē ðīnne willan tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge ðē inweardlīce lufian tōforan eallum ðingum, mid clǣnum geðance and mid clǣnum līchaman. For ðon ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend, and mīn Ālīesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēownes, and mīn Tōhopa. Sīe ðē lof and wuldor nū and ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan ǣghwilcum ęnde. Amen.

III. THE VOYAGES OF OHTHERE AND WULFSTAN.

[Lauderdale and Cottonian MSS. These voyages are an original insertion by Alfred into his translation of Orosius's *Compendious History of the World*.

"They consist," says Ten Brink, "of a complete description of all the countries in which the Teutonic tongue prevailed at Alfred's time, and a full narrative of the travels of two voyagers, which the king wrote down from their own lips. One of these, a Norwegian named Ohthere, had quite

---

3–4. **Marian . . . Michaeles.** O.E. is inconsistent in the treatment of foreign names. They are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes retain in part their original inflections. **Marian**, an original accusative, is here used as a genitive; while **Michaeles** has the O.E. genitive ending.

17. **Sīe ðē lof.** See § **105**, 1.

circumnavigated the coast of Scandinavia in his travels, and had even penetrated to the White Sea; the other, named Wulfstan, had sailed from Schleswig to Frische Haff. The geographical and ethnographical details of both accounts are exceedingly interesting, and their style is attractive, clear, and concrete."

Ohthere made two voyages. Sailing first northward along the western coast of Norway, he rounded the North Cape, passed into the White Sea, and entered the Dwina River (**ān micel ēa**). On his second voyage he sailed southward along the western coast of Norway, entered the Skager Rack (**wīdsæ**), passed through the Cattegat, and anchored at the Danish port of Haddeby (**æt Hæþum**), modern Schleswig.

Wulfstan sailed only in the Baltic Sea. His voyage of seven days from Schleswig brought him to Drausen (**Trūsō**) on the shore of the Drausensea.]

Ohthere's First Voyage.

Ōhthęre sæde his hlāforde, Ælfrede cyninge, þæt hē ealra Norðmǫnna norþmest būde. Hē cwæð þæt hē būde on þæm lande norþweardum wiþ þā Westsæ. Hē sæde þēah þæt þæt land sīe swīþe lang norþ þǫnan; ac hit is eal wēste, būton on fēawum stōwum styccemælum wīciað Finnas, on huntoðe on wintra, ǫnd on sumera on fiscaþe be þære sæ. Hē sæde þæt hē æt sumum cirre wolde fandian hū lǫnge þæt land norþryhte læge, oþþe hwæðer ænig mǫn be norðan þæm wēstenne būde. Þā fōr hē norþryhte be þæm lande: lēt him ealne weg þæt wēste land on ðæt stēorbord, ǫnd þā wīdsæ on ðæt bæcbord þrīe dagas. Þā wæs hē swā feor norþ swā þā hwælhuntan firrest faraþ. Þā fōr hē þā gīet norþryhte swā feor swā hē mealte on þæm ōþrum þrīm dagum gesiglan. Þā bēag þæt land þær ēastryhte, oþþe sēo sæ in on ðæt lǫnd, hē nysse hwæðer, būton hē wisse ðæt hē ðær bād westanwindes ǫnd hwōn norþan, ǫnd siglde ðā ēast be lande swā swā hē mealte on fēower dagum gesiglan. Þā sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðæm þæt land bēag þær sūþryhte, oþþe sēo sæ in on ðæt land, hē nysse hwæþer. Þā siglde hē þǫnan sūðryhte be lande

swā swā hē męhte[1] on fīf dagum gesiglan. Đā læg þǣr ān micel ēa ūp in on þæt land. Þā cirdon hīe ūp in on ðā ēa, for þǣm hīe ne dorston forþ bī þǣre ēa siglan for unfriþe; for þǣm ðæt land wæs eall gebūn on ōþre healfe þǣre ēas. Ne mētte hē ǣr nān gebūn land, siþþan hē frǫm his āgnum hām fōr; ac him wæs ealne weg wēste land on þæt stēorbord, būtan fiscerum ǫnd fugelerum ǫnd huntum, ǫnd þæt wǣron eall Finnas; ǫnd him wæs ā wīdsǣ on ðæt bæcbord. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīþe wel gebūd hira land: ac hīe ne dorston þǣr on cuman. Ac þāra Terfinna land wæs eal wēste, būton ðǣr huntan gewīcodon, oþþe fisceras, oþþe fugeleras.

Fela spella him sǣdon þā Beormas ǣgþer ge of hiera āgnum lande ge of þǣm landum þe ymb hīe ūtan wǣron; ac hē nyste hwæt þæs sōþes wæs, for þǣm hē hit self ne geseah. Þā Finnas, him þūhte, ǫnd þā Beormas sprǣcon nēah ān geþēode. Swīþost hē fōr ðider, tō ēacan þæs landes scēawunge, for þǣm horshwælum, for ðǣm hīe habbað swīþe æþele bān on hiora[2] tōþum — þā tēð hīe brōhton sume þǣm cyninge — ǫnd hiora hȳd bið swīðe gōd tō sciprāpum. Sē hwæl bið micle lǣssa þonne ōðre hwalas: ne bið hē lęngra ðonne syfan[3] ęlna lang; ac on his āgnum lande is sē bętsta hwælhuntað: þā bēoð eahta and fēowertiges ęlna lange, and þā mǣstan fīftiges ęlna lange; þāra hē sǣde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig on twām dagum.

---

6. **frǫm his āgnum hām.** An adverbial dative singular without an inflectional ending is found with **hām**, **dæg**, **morgen**, and **ǣfen**.

8. **ǫnd þæt wǣron.** See § **40**, Note 3.

15. **hwæt þæs sōþes wæs.** Sweet errs in explaining **sōþes** as attracted into the genitive by **þæs**. It is not a predicate adjective, but a partitive genitive after **hwæt**.

25. **syxa sum.** See § **91**, Note 2.

Hē wæs swȳðe spēdig man on þǣm āhtum þe heora[2] spēda on bēoð, þæt is, on wildrum. Hē hæfde þā gȳt, ðā hē þone cyninge[5] sōhte, tamra dēora unbebohtra syx hund. Þā dēor hī hātað 'hrānas'; þāra wæron syx stælhrānas; ðā bēoð swȳðe dȳre mid Finnum, for ðǣm hȳ fōð þā wildan hrānas mid. Hē wæs mid þǣm fyrstum mannum on þǣm lande: næfde hē þēah mā ðonne twēntig hrȳðera, and twēntig scēapa, and twēntig swȳna; and þæt lȳtle þæt hē ęrede, hē ęrede mid horsan.[4] Ac hyra ār is mǣst on þǣm gafole þe ðā Finnas him gyldað. Þæt gafol bið on dēora fellum, and on fugela feðerum, and hwales bāne, and on þǣm sciprāpum þe bēoð of hwæles hȳde geworht and of sēoles. Ælċ hwilc gylt be hys gebyrdum. Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fīftȳne mearðes fell, and fīf hrānes, and ān beren fel, and tȳn ambra feðra, and berenne kyrtel oððe yterenne, and twēgen sciprāpas; ǣgþer sȳ syxtig ęlna lang, ōþer sȳ of hwæles hȳde geworht, ōþer of sīoles.[6]

Hē sǣde ðæt Norðmanna land wǣre swȳþe lang and swȳðe smæl. Eal þæt his man āðer oððe ęttan oððe ęrian mæg, þæt līð wið ðā sǣ; and þæt is þēah on sumum stōwum swȳðe clūdig; and licgað wilde mōras wið ēastan and wið ūpp on emnlange þǣm bȳnum lande. On þǣm mōrum eardiað Finnas. And þæt bȳne land is ēasteweard brādost, and symle swā norðor swā smælre. Ēastewęrd[7] hit mæg bīon[8] syxtig mīla brād, oþþe hwēne brēdre; and middeweard þrītig oððe brādre; and norðeweard hē cwæð, þǣr hit smalost wǣre, þæt hit mihte bēon þrēora mīla brād tō þǣm mōre; and sē mōr syðþan,[9] on sumum

---

2. **on bēoð.** See § **94**, (5).

19. **Eal þæt his man.** Pronominal genitives are not always possessive in O.E.; **his** is here the partitive genitive of **hit**, the succeeding relative pronoun being omitted: *All that (portion) of it that may, either-of-the-two, either be grazed or plowed*, etc. (§ **70**, Note).

stōwum, swā brād swā man mæg on twām wucum ofer-
fēran; and on sumum stōwum swā brād swā man mæg
on syx dagum oferfēran.

Þonne is tōemnes þǣm lande sūðeweardum, on ōðre
healfe þæs mōres, Swēoland, oþ þæt land norðeweard;
and tōemnes þǣm lande norðeweardum, Cwēna land. Þā
Cwēnas hęrgiað hwīlum on ðā Norðmęn ofer ðone mōr,
hwīlum þā Norðmęn on hȳ. And þǣr sint swīðe micle
męras fersce geond þā mōras; and berað þā Cwēnas hyra
scypu ofer land on ðā męras, and þanon hęrgiað on ðā
Norðmęn; hȳ habbað swȳðe lȳtle scypa and swȳðe
leohte.

[1] = mealhte, mihte. [4] = horsum. [7] = -weard.
[2] = hiera. [5] = cyning. [8] = bēon.
[3] = seofon. [6] = sēoles. [9] = siððan.

Ohthere's Second Voyage.

Ōhthęre sǣde þæt sīo[1] scīr hātte Hālgoland, þe hē on
būde. Hē cwæð þæt nān man ne būde be norðan him.
Þonne is ān port on sūðeweardum þǣm lande, þone man
hāt Sciringeshēal. Þyder hē cwæð þæt man ne mihte
geseglian on ānum mōnðe, gyf man on niht wīcode, and
ǣlce dæge hæfde ambyrne wind; and ealle ðā hwīle hē
sceal seglian be lande. And on þæt stēorbord him bið
ǣrest Īraland, and þonne ðā īgland þe synd betux Īra-
lande and þissum lande. Þonne is þis land, oð hē cymð
tō Scirincgeshēale, and ealne weg on þæt bæcbord Norð-

11-12. **scypa . . . leohte.** These words exhibit inflections more frequent in Late than in Early West Saxon. The normal forms would be **scypu**, **leoht**; but in Late West Saxon the **-u** of short-stemmed neuters is generally replaced by **-a**; and the nominative accusative plural neuter of adjectives takes, by analogy, the masculine endings: **hwate**, **gōde**, **hālge**, instead of **hwatu**, **gōd**, **hālgu**.

weg. Wið sūðan þone Sciringeshēal fylð swȳðe mycel sæ ūp in on ðæt land; sēo is brādre þonne ænig man ofer sēon mæge. And is Gotland on ōðre healfe ongēan, and siððan Sillęnde. Sēo sæ līð mænig[2] hund mīla ūp in on þæt land.

And of Sciringeshēale hē cwæð ðæt hē seglode on fīf dagan[3] tō þǣm porte þe mǫn hæt æt Hæðum; sē stęnt betuh Winedum, and Seaxum, and Angle, and hȳrð in on Dęne. Ðā hē þiderweard seglode fram Sciringeshēale, þā wæs him on þæt bæcbord Dęnamearc and on þæt stēorbord wīdsæ þrȳ dagas; and þā, twēgen dagas ær hē tō Hæðum cōme, him wæs on þæt stēorbord Gotland, and Sillęnde, and īglanda fela. On þǣm landum eardodon Ęngle, ær hī hider on land cōman.[4] And hym wæs ðā twēgen dagas on ðæt bæcbord þā īgland þe in on Dęnemearce hȳrað.

[1] = sēo. [2] = mǫnig. [3] = dagum. [4] = cōmen.

Wulfstan's Voyage.

Wulfstān sæde þæt hē gefōre of Hæðum, þæt hē wære on Trūsō on syfan dagum and nihtum, þæt þæt scip wæs ealne weg yrnende under segle. Weonoðland him wæs

---

7. **æt Hæðum.** "This pleonastic use of *æt* with names of places occurs elsewhere in the older writings, as in the Chronicle (552), 'in þǣre stōwe þe is genęmned æt Searobyrg,' where the *æt* has been erased by some later hand, showing that the idiom had become obsolete. *Cp.* the German 'Gasthaus zur Krone,' Stamboul = *es tān pólin.*" (Sweet.) See, also, *Atterbury*, § 28, Note 3.

14-15. **wæs . . . þā īgland.** The singular predicate is due again to inversion (p. 100, note on **gefeaht**). The construction is comparatively rare in O.E., but frequent in Shakespeare and in the popular speech of to-day. Cf. *There is, Here is, There has been*, etc., with a (single) plural subject following.

on stēorbord, and on bæcbord him wæs Langaland, and Lǣland, and Falster, and Scōnēg; and þās land eall hȳrað tō Dęnemearcan. And þonne Burgenda land wæs ūs on bæcbord, and þā habbað him sylfe[1] cyning. Þonne æfter Burgenda lande wæron ūs þās land, þā synd hātene ǣrest Blēcinga-ēg, and Mēore, and Ēowland, and Gotland on bæcbord; and þās land hȳrað tō Swēom. And Weonodland wæs ūs ealne weg on stēorbord oð Wīslemūðan. Sēo Wīsle is swȳðe mycel ēa, and hīo[2] tōlīð Wītland and Weonodland; and þæt Wītland belimpeð tō Estum; and sēo Wīsle līð ūt of Weonodlande, and līð in Estmęre; and sē Estmęre is hūru fīftēne[3] mīla brād. Þonne cymeð Ilfing ēastan in Estmęre of ðǣm męre, ðe Trūsō standeð in stæðe; and cumað ūt samod in Estmęre, Ilfing ēastan of Estlande, and Wīsle sūðan of Winodlande. And þonne benimð Wīsle Ilfing hire naman, and ligeð of þǣm męre west and norð on sǣ; for ðȳ hit man hǣt Wīslemūða.

Þæt Estland is swȳðe mycel, and þǣr bið swȳðe manig burh, and on ǣlcere byrig bið cyning. And þǣr bið swȳðe mycel hunig, and fiscnað; and sē cyning and þā rīcostan męn drincað mȳran meolc, and þā unspēdigan and þā þēowan drincað medo.[4] Þǣr bið swȳðe mycel gewinn betwēonan him. And ne bið ðǣr nǣnig ealo[5] gebrowen mid Estum, ac þǣr bið medo genōh. And þǣr is mid Estum ðēaw, þonne þǣr bið man dēad, þæt hē līð inne unforbærned mid his māgum and frēondum mōnað, gē hwīlum twēgen; and þā cyningas, and þā ōðre hēahðungene męn, swā micle lęngc[6] swā hī māran spēda habbað, hwīlum healf gēar þæt hī bēoð unforbærned, and

---

1–4. **him . . . ūs.** Note the characteristic change of person, the transition from *indirect* to *direct discourse.*

liegað bufan eorðan on hyra hūsum. And ealle þā hwīle þe þæt līc bið inne, þǣr sceal bēon gedrync and plega, oð ðone dæg þe hī hine forbærnað. Þonne þȳ ylcan dæge þe hī hine tō þǣm āde beran wyllað, þonne tōdǣlað hī his feoh, þæt þǣr tō lāfe bið æfter þǣm gedrynce and þǣm plegan, on fīf oððe syx, hwȳlum on mā, swā swā þæs fēos andēfn bið. Ālęcgað hit ðonne forhwæga on ānre mīle þone mǣstan dǣl fram þǣm tūne, þonne ōðerne, ðonne þone þriddan, oþ þe hyt eall ālēd bið on þǣre ānre mīle; and sceall bēon sē lǣsta dǣl nȳhst þǣm tūne ðe sē dēada man on līð. Ðonne sceolon[7] bēon gesamnode ealle ðā męnn ðe swyftoste hors habbað on þǣm lande, forhwæga on fīf mīlum oððe on syx mīlum fram þǣm fēo. Þonne ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þǣm fēo: ðonne cymeð sē man sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað tō þǣm ǣrestan dǣle and tō þǣm mǣstan, and swā ǣlc æfter ōðrum, oþ hit bið eall genumen; and sē nimð þone lǣstan dǣl sē nȳhst þǣm tūne þæt feoh geærneð. And þonne rīdeð ǣlc hys weges mid ðǣm fēo, and hyt mōtan[8] habban eall; and for ðȳ þǣr bēoð þā swiftan hors ungefōge dȳre. And þonne his gestrēon bēoð þus eall āspęnded, þonne byrð man hine ūt, and forbærneð mid his wǣpnum and hrægle; and swīðost

---

2. **sceal.** See § **137**, Note 2 (2).

7. **Ālęcgað hit.** Bosworth illustrates thus:

"The horsemen assemble five or six miles from the property, at *d* or *e*, and run towards *c*; the man who has the swiftest horse, coming first to 1 or *c*, takes the first and largest part. The man who has the horse coming second takes part 2 or *b*, and so, in succession, till the least part, 6 or *a*, is taken."

1 eall[illegible]ys spēda hȳ forspęndað mid þǣm langan legere
2 þæs dēadan mannes inne, and þæs þe hȳ be þǣm wegum
3 ālęcgað, þe ðā fręmdan tō ærnað, and nimað. And þæt
4 is mid Estum þēaw þæt þǣr sceal ǣlces geðēodes man
5 bēon forbærned; and gyf þār[9] man ān bān findeð unfor-
6 bærned, hī hit sceolan[7] miclum gebētan. And þǣr is mid
7 Estum ān mǣgð þæt hī magon cyle gewyrcan; and þȳ
8 þǣr licgað þā dēadan męn swā lange, and ne fūliað, þæt
9 hȳ wyrcað þone cyle him on. And þēah man āsętte
10 twēgen fǣtels full ealað oððe wæteres, hȳ gedōð þæt
11 ǣgþer bið oferfroren, sam hit sȳ sumor sam winter.

[1] = selfe.	[4] = medu.	[7] = sculon.
[2] = hēo.	[5] = ealu.	[8] = mōton.
[3] = fīftīene.	[6] = lęng.	[9] = ðǣr.

5–6. **man . . . hī.** Here the plural **hī** refers to the singular **man.** *Cf.* p. 109, ll. 18–19, **ǣlc . . . mōtan.** In *Exodus* xxxii, 24, we find "*Whosoever* hath any gold, let *them* break it off"; and Addison writes, "I do not mean that I think *anyone* to blame for taking due care of *their* health." The construction, though outlawed now, has been common in all periods of our language. Paul remarks (*Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte*, 3d ed., § 186) that "When a word is used as an indefinite [one, man, somebody, etc.] it is, strictly speaking, incapable of any distinction of number. Since, however, in respect of the external form, a particular number has to be chosen, it is a matter of indifference which this is. . . . Hence a change of numbers is common in the different languages." Paul fails to observe that the change is always from singular to plural, not from plural to singular. See *Note on the Concord of Collectives and Indefinites* (Anglia XI, 1901). See p. 119, note on ll. 19–21.

IV. THE STORY OF CÆDMON.

[From the so-called Alfredian version of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*. The text generally followed is that of MS. Bodley, Tanner 10. Miller (*Early English Text Society*, No. 95, *Introd.*) argues, chiefly from the use of the prepositions, that the original O.E. MS. was Mercian, composed possibly in Lichfield (Staffordshire). At any rate, O.E. idiom is frequently sacrificed to the Latin original.

"Cædmon, as he is called, is the first Englishman whose name we know who wrote poetry in our island of England; and the first to embody in verse the new passions and ideas which Christianity had brought into England. . . . Undisturbed by any previous making of lighter poetry, he came fresh to the work of Christianising English song. It was a great step to make. He built the chariot in which all the new religious emotions of England could now drive along." (Brooke, *The History of Early English Literature*, cap. XV.) There is no reason to doubt the historical existence of Cædmon; for Bede, who relates the story, lived near Whitby, and was seven years old when Cædmon died (A.D. 680)].

In ðysse abbudissan mynstre wæs sum brōðor syndriglīce mid godcundre gife gemǣred ǫnd geweorðad, for þon he gewunade gerisenlīce lēoð wyrcan, þā ðe tō ǣfęstnisse[1] ǫnd tō ārfæstnisse belumpon; swā ðæt̄te swā hwæt swā hē of godcundum stafum þurh bōceras geleornode, þæt hē æfter medmiclum fæce in scopgereorde mid þā mǣstan swētnisse ǫnd inbryrdnisse gęglęngde, ǫnd in Ęnglisc gereorde wel geworht forþ brōhte. Ǫnd for his lēoþsǫngum

1. **ðysse abbudissan.** The abbess referred to is the famous Hild, or Hilda, then living in the monastery at Streones-halh, which, according to Bede, means "Bay of the Beacon." The Danes afterward gave it the name Whitby, or "White Town." The surroundings were eminently fitted to nurture England's first poet. "The natural scenery which surrounded him, the valley of the Esk, on whose sides he probably lived, the great cliffs, the billowy sea, the vast sky seen from the heights over the ocean, played incessantly upon him." (Brooke.)

Note, also, in this connection, the numerous Latin words that the introduction of Christianity (A.D. 597) brought into the vocabulary of O.E.: **abbudisse**, **mynster**, **bisceop**, **Lǣden**, **prēost**, **æstel**, **mancus**.

monigra monna mōd oft to worulde forhogdnisse ond tō
gepēodnisse þæs heofonlīcan līfes onbærnde wǣron. Ond
ēac swelce[2] monige ōðre æfter him in Ongelþēode ongun-
non ǣfeste lēoð wyrcan, ac nǣnig hwæðre him þæt gelīce
dōn ne meahte; for þon hē nālæs from monnum nē ðurh
mon gelǣred wæs þæt hē ðone lēoðcræft leornade, ac hē
wæs godcundlīce gefultumod, ond þurh Godes gife þone
songcræft onfēng; ond hē for ðon nǣfre nōht lēasunge,
nē īdles lēoþes wyrcan ne meahte, ac efne þā ān dā ðe tō
ǣfestnisse[1] belumpon, ond his þā ǣfestan tungan gedaf-
enode singan.

Wæs hē, sē mon, in weoruldhāde[3] gesęted oð þā tīde þe
hē wæs gelȳfdre ylde, ond nǣfre nǣnig lēoð geleornade.
Ond hē for þon oft in gebēorscipe, þonne þǣr wæs blisse
intinga gedēmed, þæt hēo[4] ealle sceolden þurh endebyrd-
nesse be hearpan singan, þonne hē geseah þā hearpan him
nēalēcan, þonne ārās hē for scome from þǣm symble,
ond hām ēode tō his hūse. Þā hē þæt þā sumre tīde
dyde, þæt hē forlēt þæt hūs þæs gebēorscipes, ond ūt wæs

4–5. The more usual order of words would be **ac nǣnig, hwæðre, ne meahte ðæt dōn gelīce him.**

10–11. **ond his . . . singan**, *and which it became his (the) pious tongue to sing.*

14–15. **blisse intinga**, *for the sake of joy;* but the translator has confused *laetitiae causā* (ablative) and *laetitiae causa* (nominative). The proper form would be **for blisse** with omission of **intingan**, just as *for my sake* is usually **for mē**; *for his* (or *their*) *sake*, **for him.** *Cf. Mark* vi, 26: "Yet *for his oath's sake, and for their sakes which sat with him*, he would not reject her," **for ðǣm āðe, ond for ðǣm þe him mid sǣton.** *For his sake* is frequently **for his ðingon** (**ðingum**), rarely **for his intingan.** **Þingon** is regularly used when the preceding genitive is a noun denoting a person: *for my wife's sake*, **for mīnes wīfes ðingon** (*Genesis* xx, 11), etc.

18–19. **þæt . . . þæt hē forlēt.** The substantival clause introduced by the second **þæt** amplifies by apposition the first **þæt**: *When he then, at a certain time* (instrumental case, § **98**, (2)), *did*

gǫngende tō nēata scipene, þāra heord him wæs þǣre nihte beboden; þā hē ðā þǣr on gelimplīcre tīde his leomu[5] on rǫste gesǫtte ǫnd onslēpte, þā stōd him sum mǫn æt þurh swefn, ǫnd hine hālette ǫnd grētte, ǫnd hine be his nǫman nęmnde: "Cædmǫn, sing mē hwæthwugu." Þā ǫndswarede hē, ǫnd cwæð: "Ne cǫn ic nōht singan; ǫnd ic for þon of þyssum gebēorscipe ūt ēode ǫnd hider gewāt, for þon ic nāht singan ne cūðe." Eft hē cwæð sē ðe wiþ hine sprecende wæs: "Hwæðre þū meaht mē singan." Þā cwæð hē: "Hwæt sceal ic singan?" Cwæð hē: "Sing mē frumsceaft." Þā hē ðā þās andsware onfēng, þā ongǫn hē sōna singan, in hęrenesse Godes Scyppendes, þā fers ǫnd þā word þe hē næfre ne gehȳrde, þāra ęndebyrdnes þis is:

Nū sculon hęrigean[6] heofonrīces Weard,
Metodes meahte ǫnd his mōdgeþanc,
weorc Wuldorfæder, swā hē wundra gehwæs,
ēce Drihten ōr onstealde.

---

that, namely, when he left the house. The better Mn.E. would be *this . . . that:* "Added yet *this* above all, *that* he shut up John in prison" (*Luke* iv, 20).

1–2. **þāra . . . beboden.** This does not mean that Cædmon was a herdsman, but that he served in turn as did the other secular attendants at the monastery.

13–14. **þāra ęndebyrdnes þis is.** Bede writes *Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verborum*, and gives in Latin prose a translation of the hymn from the Northumbrian dialect, in which Cædmon wrote. The O.E. version given above is, of course, not the Northumbrian original (which, however, with some variations is preserved in several of the Latin MSS. of Bede's *History*), but a West Saxon version made also from the Northumbrian, not from the Latin.

15. **Nū sculon hęrigean,** *Now ought we to praise.* The subject **wē** is omitted in the best MSS. Note the characteristic use of synonyms, or epithets, in this bit of O.E. poetry. Observe that it is not the *thought* that is repeated, but rather the *idea*, the *concept*, God. See p. 124.

17. **wundra gehwæs.** See p. 140, note on **cēnra gehwylcum.**

Hē ǣrest scēop eorðan bearnum
heofon tō hrōfe, hālig Scyppend;
þā middangeard mǫncynnes Weard,
ēce Drihten, æfter tēode
fīrum foldan, Frēa ælmihtig.

Þā ārās hē frǫm þǣm slǣpe, ǫnd eal þā þe hē slǣpende sǫng fæste in gemynde hæfde; ǫnd þǣm wordum sōna mǫnig word in þæt ilce gemet Gode wyrðes sǫnges tōgeþēodde. Þā cōm hē on morgenne tō þǣm tūngerēfan, sē þe his ealdormǫn wæs: sægde him hwylce gife hē onfēng; ǫnd hē hine sōna tō þǣre abbudissan gelædde, ǫnd hire þæt cȳðde ǫnd sægde. Þā heht hēo gesǫmnian ealle þā gelǣredestan męn ǫnd þā leorneras, ǫnd him ǫndweardum hēt sęcgan þæt swefn, ǫnd þæt lēoð singan, þæt ealra heora[7] dōme gecoren wǣre, hwæt oððe hwǫnan þæt cumen wǣre. Þā wæs him eallum gesewen, swā swā hit wæs, þæt him wǣre frǫm Drihtne sylfum heofonlīc

---

7–9. **ǫnd þǣm wordum . . . tōgeþēodde**, *and to those words he soon joined, in the same meter, many (other) words of song worthy of God.* But the translator has not only blundered over Bede's Latin (*eis mox plura in eandem modum verba Deo digna carminis adjunxit*), but sacrificed still more the idiom of O.E. The predicate should not come at the end; **in** should be followed by the dative; and for **Gode wyrðes sǫnges** the better O.E. would be **sǫnges Godes wyrðes.** When used with the dative **wyrð** (**weorð**) usually means *dear* (= *of worth*) *to.*

16. **þā . . . gesewen.** We should expect **frǫm him eallum**; but the translator has again closely followed the Latin (*visumque est omnibus*), as later (in the *Conversion of Edwin*) he renders *Talis mihi videtur* by **þyslīc mē is gesewen.** *Talis* (**þyslīc**) agreeing with a following *vita* (**līf**). Ælfric, however, with no Latin before him, writes that John **wearð ðā him** [= **frǫm Drihtene**] **inweardlīce gelufod.** It would seem that in proportion as a past participle has the force of an adjective, the *to* relation may supplant the *by* relation; just as we say *unknown to* instead of *unknown by*, *unknown* being more adjectival than participial. **Gesewen**, therefore, may here be

gifu forgifen. Þā rȩhton hēo[4] him ǫnd sægdon sum hālig spell ǫnd godcundre lāre word: bebudon him þā, gif hē meahte, þæt hē in swīnsunge lēoþsǫnges þæt gehwyrfde. Þā hē ðā hæfde þā wīsan onfǫngne, þā ēode hē hām tō his hūse, ǫnd cwōm eft on morgenne, ǫnd þȳ bętstan lēoðe geglęnged him āsǫng ǫnd āgeaf þæt him beboden wæs.

Ðā ongan sēo abbudisse clyppan ǫnd lufigean[8] þā Godes gife in þǣm męn, ǫnd hēo hine þā mǫnade ǫnd lærde þæt hē woruldhād forlēte ǫnd munuchād onfēnge: ǫnd hē þæt wel þafode. Ǫnd hēo hine in þæt mynster onfēng mid his gōdum, ǫnd hine geþēodde tō gesǫmnunge þāra Godes þēowa, ǫnd heht hine lǣran þæt getæl þæs hālgan stǣres ǫnd spelles. Ǫnd hē eal þā hē in gehȳrnesse geleornian meahte, mid hine gemyndgade, ǫnd swā swā clǣne nēten[9] eodorcende in þæt swēteste lēoð gehwyrfde. Ǫnd his sǫng ǫnd his lēoð wǣron swā wynsumu tō gehȳranne, þætte þā seolfan[10] his lārēowas æt his mūðe writon ǫnd leornodon. Sǫng hē ǣrest be middangeardes gesceape, ǫnd bī fruman mǫncynnes, ǫnd eal þæt stǣr Genesis (þæt is sēo ǣreste Moyses bōc); ǫnd eft bī ūtgǫnge Israhēla folces of Ægypta lǫnde, ǫnd bī ingǫnge þæs gehātlandes; ǫnd bī ōðrum mǫnegum spellum þæs hālgan gewrites

---

translated *visible, evident, patent* (= **gesynelīc, sweotol**); and **geluf-od**, *dear* (= **weorð, lēof**).

A survival of adjectival **gesewen** is found in Wycliffe's *New Testament* (1 *Cor.* xv, 5–8): "He was *seyn to* Cephas, and aftir these thingis *to* enleuene; aftirward he was *seyn to* mo than fyue hundrid britheren togidere . . . aftirward he was *seyn to* James, and aftirward *to* alle the apostlis. And last of alle he was *seyn to* me, as *to* a deed borun child." The construction is frequent in Chaucer.

9–10. **ǫnd hēo hine þā mǫnade . . . munuchād onfēnge.** Hild's advice has in it the suggestion of a personal experience, for she herself had lived half of her life (thirty-three years) "before," says Bede, "she dedicated the remaining half to our Lord in a monastic life."

canōnes bōca; ǫnd bī Crīstes męnniscnesse, ǫnd bī his þrōwunge, ǫnd bī his ūpāstīgnesse in heofonas; ǫnd bī þæs Hālgan Gāstes cyme, ǫnd þāra apostola lāre; ǫnd eft bī þǣm dæge þæs tōweardan dōmes, ǫnd bī fyrhtu þæs tintreglīcan wītes, ǫnd bī swētnesse þæs heofonlīcan rīces, hē mǫnig lēoð geworhte; ǫnd swelce[2] ēac ōðer mǫnig be þǣm godcundan fręmsumnessum ǫnd dōmum hē geworhte. In eallum þǣm hē geornlīce gēmde[11] þæt hē męn ātuge frǫm synna lufan ǫnd māndǣda, ǫnd tō lufan ǫnd tō geornfulnesse āwęhte gōdra dǣda; for þon hē wæs, sē mǫn, swīþe ǣfęst ǫnd regollīcum þēodscipum ēaðmōdlīce underþēoded; ǫnd wið þǣm þā ðe in ōðre wīsan dōn woldon, hē wæs mid welme[12] micelre ęllenwōdnisse onbærned. Ǫnd hē for ðon fægre ęnde his līf betȳnde ǫnd geęndade.

[1] = ǣfæstnesse. [2] = swilce. [3] = woruldhāde. [4] = hīe. [5] = limu. [6] = hęrian. [7] = hiera. [8] = lufian. [9] = nīeten. [10] = selfan. [11] = gīemde. [12] = wielme.

V. ALFRED'S PREFACE TO THE PASTORAL CARE.

[Based on the Hatton MS. Of the year 597, the *Chronicle* says: "In this year, Gregory the Pope sent into Britain Augustine with very many monks, who gospelled [preached] God's word to the English folk." Gregory I, surnamed "The Great," has ever since been considered the apostle of English Christianity, and his *Pastoral Care*, which contains instruction in conduct and doctrine for all bishops, was a work that Alfred could not afford to leave untranslated. For this translation Alfred wrote a *Preface*, the historical value of which it would be hard to overrate. In it he describes vividly the intellectual ruin that the Danes had wrought, and develops at the same time his plan for repairing that ruin.

---

6. **hē mǫnig lēoð geworhte.** The opinion is now gaining ground that of these "many poems" only the short hymn, already given, has come down to us. Of other poems claimed for Cædmon, the strongest arguments are advanced in favor of a part of the fragmentary poetical paraphrase of *Genesis*.

This *Preface* and the *Battle of Ashdown* (p. 99) show the great king in his twofold character of warrior and statesman, and justify the inscription on the base of the statue erected to him in 1877, at Wantage (Berkshire), his birth-place: "Ælfred found Learning dead, and he restored it; Education neglected, and he revived it; the laws powerless, and he gave them force; the Church debased, and he raised it; the Land ravaged by a fearful Enemy, from which he delivered it. Ælfred's name will live as long as mankind shall respect the Past."]

Ælfred kyning hāteð grētan Wærferð biscep[1] his wordum luflīce ǫnd frēondlīce; ǫnd ðē cȳðan hāte ðæt mē cōm swīðe oft on gemynd, hwelce[2] witan īu[3] wǣron giond[4] Angelcynn, ægðer ge godcundra hāda ge woruldcundra; ǫnd hū gesǣliglīca tīda ðā wǣron giond Angelcynn; ǫnd hū ðā kyningas ðe ðone onwald hæfdon ðæs folces on ðām dagum Gode ǫnd his ærendwrecum hērsumedon[5]; ǫnd hū hīe ægðer ge hiora sibbe ge hiora siodo[6] ge hiora onweald innanbordes gehīoldon,[4] ǫnd ēac ūt hiora ēðel gerȳmdon; ǫnd hū him ðā spēow ægðer ge mid wīge ge mid wīsdōme; ǫnd ēac ðā godcundan hādas hū giorne hīe wǣron ægðer ge ymb lāre ge ymb liornunga, ge ymb ealle ðā ðīowotdōmas ðe hīe Gode dōn scoldon; ǫnd hū man ūtanbordes wīsdōm ǫnd lāre hieder on lǫnd sōhte, ǫnd hū wē hīe nū sceoldon ūte begietan, gif wē hīe habban sceoldon. Swæ[7] clæne hīo wæs oðfeallenu on Angelcynne ðæt swīðe fēawa wǣron behionan Humbre ðe hiora ðēninga cūðen understǫndan on Ęnglisc oððe furðum ān ærendgewrit of Lædene on Ęnglisc āręccean; ǫnd ic wēne ðætte nōht mǫnige begiondan Humbre nǣren. Swæ[7] fēawa hiora wǣron ðæt ic furðum ānne ānlēpne[8] ne mæg geðęnc-

---

1–2. **Ælfred kyning hāteð . . . hāte.** Note the change from the formal and official third person (**hāteð**) to the more familiar first person (**hāte**). So Ælfric, in his *Preface to Genesis*, writes **Ælfric munuc grēt Æðelwærd ealdormann ēadmōdlīce. Þū bǣde mē, lēof, þæt ic,** etc.: *Ælfric, monk, greets Æthelweard, alderman, humbly. Thou, beloved, didst bid me that I,* etc.

ean be sūðan Tęmese, ðā ðā ic tō rīce fēng. Gode æl-
mihtegum sīe ðǫnc ðætte wē nū ǣnigne onstāl habbað
lārēowa. Ǫnd for ðon ic ðē bebīode ðæt ðū dō swā[7] ic
gelīefe ðæt ðū wille, ðæt ðū ðē ðissa woruldðinga tō ðǣm
geǣmetige, swā ðū oftost mæge, ðæt ðū ðone wīsdōm ðe
ðē God sealde ðær ðær ðū hiene befæstan mæge, befæste.
Geðęnc hwelc[9] wītu ūs ðā becōmon for ðisse worulde, ðā
ðā wē hit nōhwæðer nē selfe ne lufodon, nē ēac ōðrum
mǫnnum ne lēfdon[10]: ðone naman ānne wē lufodon ðætte
wē Crīstne wǣren, ǫnd swīðe fēawe ðā ðēawas.

Ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā gemunde ic ēac hū ic
geseah, ær ðǣm ðe hit eall forhęrgod wǣre ǫnd for-
bærned, hū ðā ciricean giond eall Angelcynn stōdon
māðma ǫnd bōca gefylda, ǫnd ēac micel męnigeo[11] Godes
ðīowa; ǫnd ðā swīðe lȳtle fiorme ðāra bōca wiston, for
ðǣm ðe hīe hiora nānuwuht[12] ongietan ne meahton, for
ðǣm ðe hīe nǣron on hiora āgen geðīode āwritene.
Swelce[13] hīe cwǣden: "Ūre ieldran, ðā ðe ðās stōwa ær
hīoldon, hīe lufodon wīsdōm, ǫnd ðurh ðone hīe begēaton
welan, ǫnd ūs lēfdon. Hēr mǫn mæg gīet gesīon hiora
swæð, ac wē him ne cunnon æfter spyrigean,[14] ǫnd for
ðǣm wē habbað nū ǣgðer forlǣten ge ðone welan ge ðone
wīsdōm, for ðǣm ðe wē noldon tō ðǣm spore mid ūre
mōde onlūtan."

Ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā wundrade ic swīðe swīðe
ðāra gōdena wiotona[15] ðe gīu wǣron giond Angelcynn, ǫnd
ðā bēc ealla be fullan geliornod hæfdon, ðæt hīe hiora ðā

---

5. Notice that **mæge** (l. 5) and **mæge** (l. 6) are not in the subjunctive because the sense requires it, but because they have been attracted by **geǣmetige** and **befæste**. **Sīen** (p. 119, l. 15) and **hæbben** (p. 119, l. 20) illustrate the same construction.

9–10. *We liked only the reputation of being Christians, very few (of us) the Christian virtues.*

nǣnne dǣl noldon on hiora āgen geðīode węndan. Ac ic ðā sōna eft mē selfum andwyrde, ǫnd cwæð: "Hīe ne wēndon þætte ǣfre męnn sceolden swā[7] reccelēase weorðan, ǫnd sīo lār swā oðfeallan; for ðǣre wilnunga hīe hit forlēton, ǫnd woldon ðæt hēr ðȳ māra wīsdōm on lǫnde wǣre ðȳ wē mā geðēoda cūðon."

Ðā gemunde ic hū sīo ǣ wæs ǣrest on Ebrēisc geðīode funden, ǫnd eft, ðā hīe Crēacas geliornodon, ðā węndon hīe hīe on hiora āgen geðīode ealle, ǫnd ēac ealle ōðre bēc. Ǫnd eft Lædenware swā same, siððan hīe hīe geliornodon, hīe hīe węndon ealla ðurh wīse wealhstōdas on hiora āgen geðīode. Ǫnd ēac ealla ōðra Crīstena ðīoda sumne dǣl hiora on hiora āgen geðīode węndon. For ðȳ mē ðyncð bętre, gif īow swā ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac suma bēc, ðā ðe nīedbeðearfosta sīen eallum mǫnnum tō wiotonne,[16] ðæt wē ðā on ðæt geðīode węnden ðe wē ealle gecnāwan mægen, ǫnd gedōn swā wē swīðe ēaðe magon mid Godes fultume, gif wē ðā stilnesse habbað, ðætte eall sīo gioguð ðe nū is on Angelcynne frīora mǫnna, ðāra ðe ðā spēda hæbben ðæt hīe ðǣm befēolan mægen, sīen tō liornunga oðfæste, ðā hwīle ðe hīe tō

---

14. Alfred is here addressing the bishops collectively, and hence uses the plural **īow** (= **ēow**), not **þē**.

16. **ðæt wē ðā.** These three words are not necessary to the sense. They constitute the figure known as epanalepsis, in which "the same word or phrase is repeated after one or more intervening words." **Þā** is the pronominal substitute for **suma bēc**.

17. **Gedōn** is the first person plural subjunctive (from infinitive **gedōn**). It and **węnden** are in the same construction. Two things seem "better" to Alfred: (1) *that we translate*, etc., (2) *that we cause*, etc.

19–21. **sīo gioguð . . . is . . . hīe . . . sīen.** Notice how the collective noun, **gioguð**, singular at first both in form and function, gradually loses its oneness before the close of the sentence is reached, and becomes plural. The construction is entirely legitimate

1 nānre ōðerre note ne mæġen, oð ðone first ðe hīe wel
2 cunnen Ęnglisc gewrit ārǣdan: lǣre mǫn, siððan furður
3 on Lǣdengeðīode ðā ðe mǫn furðor lǣran wille, ǫnd tō
4 hīerran hāde dōn wille. Ðā ic ðā gemunde hū sīo lār
5 Lǣdengeðīodes ǣr ðissum āfeallen wæs giond Angel-
6 cynn, ǫnd ðēah mǫnige cūðon Ęnglisc gewrit ārǣdan, ðā
7 ongan ic ongemang ōðrum mislīcum ǫnd manigfealdum
8 bisgum ðisses kynerīces ðā bōc węndan on Ęnglisc ðe is
9 genęmned on Lǣden "Pastoralis," ǫnd on Ęnglisc "Hier-
10 debōc," hwīlum word be worde, hwīlum andgit of and-
11 giete, swǣ swǣ ic hīe geliornode æt Plegmunde mīnum
12 ærcebiscepe, ǫnd æt Assere mīnum biscepe, ǫnd æt Grim-
13 bolde mīnum mæsseprīoste, ǫnd æt Iōhanne mīnum mæs-
14 seprēoste. Siððan ic hīe ðā geliornod hæfde, swǣ swǣ
15 ic hīe forstōd, ǫnd swǣ ic hīe andgitfullīcost āręccean
16 meahte, ic hīe on Ęnglisc āwęnde; ǫnd tō ælcum biscep-
17 stōle on mīnum rīce wille āne onsęndan; ǫnd on ælcre
18 bið ān æstel, sē bið on fīftegum mancessa. Ǫnd ic be-
19 bīode on Godes naman ðæt nān mǫn ðone æstel frǫm
20 ðǣre bēc ne dō, nē ðā bōc frǫm ðǣm mynstre; uncūð hū
21 lǫnge ðǣr swǣ gelǣrede biscepas sīen, swǣ swǣ nū, Gode
22 ðǫnc, wel hwǣr siendon. For ðȳ ic wolde ðætte hīe eal-

---

in Mn.E. Spanish is the only modern language known to me that condemns such an idiom: "Spanish ideas of congruity do not permit a collective noun, though denoting a plurality, to be accompanied by a plural verb or adjective in the same clause" (Ramsey, *Text-Book of Modern Spanish*, § 1452).

2. lǣre mǫn. See § **105**, 1.

11–13. That none of these advisers of the king, except Plegmond, a Mercian, were natives, bears out what Alfred says about the scarcity of learned men in England when he began to reign. Asser, to whose Latin *Life of Alfred*, in spite of its mutilations, we owe almost all of our knowledge of the king, came from St. David's (in Wales), and was made Bishop of Sherborne.

1 neg æt ðǣre stōwe wǣren, būton sē biscep hīe mid him
2 habban wille, oððe hīo hwǣr tō lǣne sīe, oððe hwā ōðre
3 bī wrīte.

[1] = bisceop. [2] = hwilce. [3] = gīu.
[4] = For all words with *io* (*īo*), consult Glossary under *eo* (*ēo*).
[5] = hīersumedon. [9] = hwilc. [13] = swilce.
[6] = sidu (siodu). [10] = līefdon. [14] = spyrian.
[7] = swā. [11] = męnigu. [15] = witena.
[8] = ānlīpigne. [12] = nānwiht. [16] = witanne.

---

1. Translate **æt ðǣre stōwe** by *each in its place*. The change from plural **hīe** (in **hīe . . . wǣren**) to singular **hīe** (in the clauses that follow) will thus be prepared for.

2–3. **oððe hwā ōðre bī wrīte**, *or unless some one wish to copy a new one* (*write thereby another*).

POETRY.

INTRODUCTORY.

I. HISTORY.

(*a*) Old English Poetry as a Whole.

NORTHUMBRIA was the home of Old English poetry. Beginning with Cædmon and his school A.D. 670, Northumbria maintained her poetical supremacy till A.D. 800, seven years before which date the ravages of the Danes had begun. When Alfred ascended the throne of Wessex (871), the Danes had destroyed the seats of learning throughout the whole of Northumbria. As Whitby had been "the cradle of English poetry," Winchester (Alfred's capital) became now the cradle of English prose; and the older poems that had survived the fire and sword of the Vikings were translated from the original Northumbrian dialect into the West Saxon dialect. It is, therefore, in the West Saxon dialect that these poems[1] have come down to us.

Old English poetry contains in all only about thirty thousand lines; but it includes epic, lyric, didactic,

[1] This does not, of course, include the few short poems in the *Chronicle*, or that portion of *Genesis* (*Genesis B*) supposed to have been put directly into West Saxon from an Old Saxon original. There still remain in Northumbrian the version of *Cædmon's Hymn*, fragments of the *Ruthwell Cross*, *Bede's Death-Song*, and the *Leiden Riddle*.

elegiac, and allegorical poems, together with war-ballads, paraphrases, riddles, and charms. Of the five elegiac poems (*Wanderer*, *Seafarer*, *Ruin*, *Wife's Complaint*, and *Husband's Message*), the *Wanderer* is the most artistic, and best portrays the gloomy contrast between past happiness and present grief so characteristic of the Old English lyric.

Old English literature has no love poems. The central themes of its poets are battle and bereavement, with a certain grim resignation on the part of the hero to the issues of either. The movement of the thought is usually abrupt, there being a noticeable poverty of transitional particles, or connectives, "which," says Ten Brink, "are the cement of sentence-structure."

(*b*) Beowulf.

The greatest of all Old English poems is the epic, *Beowulf*.[1] It consists of more than three thousand lines, and probably assumed approximately its present form in Northumbria about A.D. 700. It is a crystallization of continental myths; and, though nothing is said of England, the story is an invaluable index to the social, political, and ethical ideals of our Germanic ancestors before and after they settled along the English coast. It is most poetical, and its testimony is historically most valuable, in the character-portraits that it contains. The fatalism that runs through it,

[1] The word *bēowulf*, says Grimm, meant originally *bee-wolf*, or *bee-enemy*, one of the names of the woodpecker. Sweet thinks the bear was meant. But the word is almost certainly a compound of *Bēow* (cf. O.E. **bēow** = grain), a Danish demigod, and *wulf* used as a mere suffix.

instead of making the characters weak and less human, serves at times rather to dignify and elevate them. "Fate," says Beowulf (l. 572), recounting his battle with the sea-monsters, "often saves an undoomed man *if his courage hold out.*"

"The ethical essence of this poetry," says Ten Brink, "lies principally in the conception of manly virtue, undismayed courage, the stoical encounter with death, silent submission to fate, in the readiness to help others, in the clemency and liberality of the prince toward his thanes, and the self-sacrificing loyalty with which they reward him."

NOTE 1. — Many different interpretations have been put upon the story of *Beowulf* (for argument of story, see texts). Thus Müllenhoff sees in Grendel the giant-god of the storm-tossed equinoctial sea, while Beowulf is the Scandinavian god Freyr, who in the spring drives back the sea and restores the land. Laistner finds the prototype of Grendel in the noxious exhalations that rise from the Frisian coast-marshes during the summer months; Beowulf is the wind-hero, the autumnal storm-god, who dissipates the effluvia.

II. STRUCTURE.

(*a*) Style.

In the structure of Old English poetry the most characteristic feature is the constant repetition of the idea (sometimes of the thought) with a corresponding variation of phrase, or epithet. When, for example, the Queen passes into the banquet hall in *Beowulf*, she is designated at first by her name, **Wealhþēow**; she is then described in turn as **cwēn Hrōðgāres** (*Hrothgar's queen*), **gold-hroden** (*the gold-adorned*), **frēolīc wīf**

(*the noble woman*), **ides Helminga** (*the Helmings' lady*), **bēag-hroden cwēn** (*the ring-adorned queen*), **mōde geþungen** (*the high-spirited*), and **gold-hroden frēolīcu folc-cwēn** (*the gold-adorned, noble folk-queen*).

And whenever the sea enters largely into the poet's verse, not content with simple (uncompounded) words (such as **sǣ, lagu, holm, strēam, mere**, etc.), he will use numerous other equivalents (phrases or compounds), such as **waþema gebind** (*the commingling of waves*), **lagu-flōd** (*the sea-flood*), **lagu-strǣt** (*the sea-street*), **swan-rād** (*the swan-road*), etc. These compounds are usually nouns, or adjectives and participles used in a sense more appositive than attributive.

It is evident, therefore, that this abundant use of compounds, or periphrastic synonyms, grows out of the desire to repeat the idea in varying language. It is to be observed, also, that the Old English poets rarely make any studied attempt to balance phrase against phrase or clause against clause. Theirs is a repetition of idea, rather than a parallelism of structure.

Note 1. — It is impossible to tell how many of these synonymous expressions had already become stereotyped, and were used, like many of the epithets in the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, purely as padding. When, for example, the poet tells us that at the most critical moment Beowulf's sword failed him, adding in the same breath, **īren ǣr-gōd** (*matchless blade*), we conclude that the bard is either nodding or parroting.

(*b*) Meter.

[Re-read § 10, (3).]

Primary Stress.

Old English poetry is composed of certain rhythmically ordered combinations of accented and unaccented

syllables. The accented syllable (the arsis) is usually long, and will be indicated by the macron with the acute accent over it (◡́); when short, by the breve with the same accent (◡̆́). The unaccented syllable or syllables (the thesis) may be long or short, and will be indicated by the oblique cross (×).

Secondary Stress.

A secondary accent, or stress, is usually put upon the second member of compound and derivative nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. This will be indicated by the macron with the grave accent, if the secondary stress falls on a long syllable (◡̀); by the breve with the same accent, if the secondary stress falls on a short syllable (◡̆̀). Nouns:

Hrōðgāres (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **fēondgrāpum** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **frēomǣgum** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **Ēast-Dęna** (◡́ ◡̆̀ ×), **Helminga** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **Scyldinga** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **ānhaga** (◡́ ◡̆̀ ×), **Ecgþēowes** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **sinc-fato** (◡́ ◡̆̀ ×).

Adjectives:[1]

ǣghwylcne (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **þrīsthȳdig** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **gold-hroden** (◡́ ◡̆̀ ×), **drēorigne** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **gyldenne** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **ōðerne** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **gǣstlīcum** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **wynsume** (◡́ ◡̆̀ ×), **ǣnigne** (◡́ ◡̀ ×).

Adverbs:[2]

unsōfte (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **heardlīce** (◡́ ◡̀ ×), **sęmninga** (◡́ ◡̀ ×).

---

[1] It will be seen that the adjectives are chiefly derivatives in **-ig**, **-en**, **-er**, **-līc**, and **-sum**.

[2] Most of the adverbs belonging here end in **-līce**, **-unga**, and **-inga**, § **93**, (1), (2): such words as **æt-gǽdere**, **on-gēan**, **on-wég**, **tō-gēanes**, **tō-míddes**, etc., are invariably accented as here indicated.

The Old English poets place also a secondary accent upon the ending of present participles (**-ende**), and upon the penultimate of weak verbs of the second class (§ **130**), provided the root-syllable is long.[1] Present participles:

slǣpendne (◡́ ◡̀ x), **wīs-hycgende** (◡́ ◡́ ◡̀ x), **flēotendra** (◡́ ◡̀ x), **hrēosende** (◡́ ◡̀ x).

Weak verbs:

swynsode (◡́ ◡̆ x), **þancode** (◡́ ◡̆ x), **wānigean** (◡́ ◡̆ x), **scēawian** (◡́ ◡̆ x), **scēawige** (◡́ ◡̆ x), **hlīfian** (◡́ ◡̆ x).

Resolved Stress.

A short accented syllable followed in the same word by an unaccented syllable (usually short also) is equivalent to one long accented syllable (◡́ x = ◡́). This is known as a resolved stress, and will be indicated thus, ◡́x:

hæleða (◡́x x), **guman** (◡́x), **Gode** (◡́x), **sęle-ful** (◡́x x), **ides** (◡́x), **fyrena** (◡́x x), **maðelode** (◡́x ◡̆ x), **hogode** (◡́x x), **mægen-ęllen** (◡́x ◡̀ x), **hige-þihtigne** (◡́x ◡́ ◡̀ x), **Metudes** (◡́x x), **lagulāde** (◡́x ◡̀ x), **unlyfigendes** (◡́ ◡́x ◡̀ x), **biforan** (x ◡́x), **forþolian** (x ◡́x x), **baðian** (◡́x x), **worolde** (◡́_ x).

Resolution of stress may also attend secondary stresses:

sinc-fato (◡́ ◡̀x), **dryht-sęle** (◡́ ◡̀x), **ferðloca** (◡́ ◡̀x), **forðwege** (◡́ ◡̀x).

---

[1] It will save the student some trouble to remember that this means long by nature (**līcodon**), or long by position (**swynsode**), or long by resolution of stress (**maðelode**), — see next paragraph.

The Normal Line.

Every normal line of Old English poetry has four primary accents, two in the first half-line and two in the second half-line. These half-lines are separated by the cesura and united by alliteration, the alliterative letter being found in the first stressed syllable of the second half-line. This syllable, therefore, gives the cue to the scansion of the whole line. It is also the only alliterating syllable in the second half-line. The first half-line, however, usually has two alliterating syllables, but frequently only one (the ratio being about three to two in the following selections). When the first half-line contains but one alliterating syllable, that syllable marks the first stress, rarely the second. The following lines are given in the order of their frequency:

(1) **þǽr wæs *h*ǽleðа *h*léahtor; *h*lýn swýnsode.**
(2) ***m*ṓde geþúngen, *m*édo-ful ætbǽr.**
(3) **sṓna þæt on*f*únde *f*ýrena hýrde.**

Any initial vowel or diphthong may alliterate with any other initial vowel or diphthong; but a consonant requires the same consonant, except **st**, **sp**, and **sc**, each of which alliterates only with itself.

Remembering, now, that either half-line (especially the second) may begin with several unaccented syllables (these syllables being known in types A, D, and E as the *anacrusis*), but that neither half-line can end with more than one unaccented syllable, the student may begin at once to read and properly accentuate Old English poetry. It will be found that the alliter-

ative principle does not operate mechanically, but that the poet employs it for the purpose of emphasizing the words that are really most important. Sound is made subservient to sense.

When, from the lack of alliteration, the student is in doubt as to what word to stress, let him first get the exact meaning of the line, and then put the emphasis on the word or words that seem to bear the chief burden of the poet's thought.

NOTE 1. — A few lines, rare or abnormal in their alliteration or lack of alliteration, may here be noted. In the texts to be read, there is one line with no alliteration: *Wanderer* 58; three of the type *a*···*b* | *a*···*b*: *Beowulf* 654, 830, 2746; one of the type *a*···*a* | *b*···*a*: *Beowulf* 2744; one of the type *a*···*a* | *b*···*c*: *Beowulf* 2718; and one of the type *a*···*b* | *c*···*a*: *Beowulf* 2738.

The Five Types.

By an exhaustive comparative study of the metrical unit in Old English verse, the half-line, Professor Eduard Sievers,[1] of the University of Leipzig, has shown that there are only five types, or varieties,

[1] Sievers' two articles appeared in the *Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur*, Vols. X (1885) and XII (1887). A brief summary, with slight modifications, is found in the same author's *Altgermanische Metrik*, pp. 120–144 (1893).

Before attempting to employ Sievers' types, the student would do well to read several pages of Old English poetry, taking care to accentuate according to the principles already laid down. In this way his ear will become accustomed to the rhythm of the line, and he will see more clearly that Sievers' work was one primarily of systematization. Sievers himself says: "I had read Old English poetry for years exactly as I now scan it, and long before I had the slightest idea that what I did instinctively could be formulated into a system of set rules." (*Altgermanische Metrik*, *Vorwort*, p. 10.)

employed. These he classifies as follows, the perpendicular line serving to separate the so-called feet, or measures:

1. A ˊ × | ˊ ×
2. B × ˊ | × ˊ
3. C × ˊ | ˊ ×
4. D { D¹ ˊ | ˊ ˘ × D² ˊ | ˊ × ˘
5. E { E¹ ˊ ˘ × | ˊ E² ˊ × ˘ | ˊ

It will be seen (1) that each half-line contains two, and only two, feet; (2) that each foot contains one, and only one, primary stress; (3) that A is trochaic, B iambic; (4) that C is iambic-trochaic; (5) that D and E consist of the same feet but in inverse order.

The Five Types Illustrated.

[All the illustrations, as hitherto, are taken from the texts to be read. The figures prefixed indicate whether first or second half-line is cited. B = *Beowulf*; W = *Wanderer*.]

1. Type A, ˊ × | ˊ ×

Two or more unaccented syllables (instead of one) may intervene between the two stresses, but only one may follow the last stress. If the thesis in either foot is the second part of a compound it receives, of course, a secondary stress.

(2) **ful gesealde**, B. 616, ˊ × | ˊ ×
(1) **wīdre gewindan**, B. 764, ˊ × × | ˊ ×
(1)[1] **Gemunde þā sē gōda**, B. 759, × | ˊ × × × | ˊ ×
(1)[1] **swylce hē on ealder-dagum**, B. 758, × × × × | ˊ × | ˋ ×
(1) **ȳþde swā þisne eardgeard**, W. 85, ˊ × × × × | ˊ ˘
(1) **wīs-fæst wordum**, B. 627, ˊ ˘ | ˊ ×
(1) **gryre-lēoð galan**, B. 787, ˋ× ˘ | ˋ ×
(2) **sǫmod ætgædre**, W. 39, ˋ× × | ˊ ×

[1] The first perpendicular marks the limit of the anacrusis.

(1) **duguðe ǫnd geogoðe**, B. 622, ◡́x × × | ◡́x ×
(1) **fæger fold-bold**, B. 774, ×́ × | ×́ ×̀
(1) **atelīc ęgesa**, B. 785, ◡́x ×̀ | ◡́x ×
(2) **goldwine mīnne**, W. 22, ×́ ◡̀x | ×́ ×
(1) **ęgesan þēon** [> *þīhan: § **118**], B. 2737, ◡́x × | ×́ ×

Note. — Rare forms of **A** are ×́ ×̀ × | ×́ × (does not occur in texts), ×́ ×̀ × | ×́ ×̀ (occurs once, B. 781 (1)), and ×́ × ×̀ | ×́ × (once, B. 2743 (1)).

2. Type B, × ×́ | × ×́

Two, but not more than two, unaccented syllables may intervene between the stresses. The type of B most frequently occurring is × × ×́ | × ×́

(1) **ǫnd þā frēolīc wīf**, B. 616, × × ×́ | × ×́
(2) **hē on lust geþeah**, B. 619, × × ×́ | × ×́
(2) **þā se æðeling gīong**, B. 2716, × × ◡́x | × ×́
(2) **seah on ęnta geweorc**, B. 2718, × × ×́ | × × ×́
(1) **ofer flōda genipu**, B. 2809, × × ×́ | × × ◡́x
(1) **forþam mē wītan ne þearf**, B. 2742, × × × ×́ | × × ×́
(2) **þaes þe hire se willa gelamp**, B. 627, × × × × × ×́ | × × ×́
(1) **forþon ne mæg weorþan wīs**, W. 64, × × × × ×́ | × ×́
(1) **Næfre ic ænegum** [=**æn'gum**] **męn**, B. 656, × × × ×́ | × ×́

Note. — In the last half-line Sievers substitutes the older form **ængum**, and supposes elision of the **e** in **Næfre** (= **Næfr-ic**: × × ×́ | × ×́).

3. Type C, × ×́ | ×́ ×

The conditions of this type are usually satisfied by compound and derivative words, and the second stress (not so strong as the first) is frequently on a short syllable. The two arses rarely alliterate. As in B, two unaccented syllables in the first thesis are more common than one.

(1) **þæt hēo on ǣnigne**, B. 628, × × × ˊ | ˊ ×
(1) **þæt ic ānunga**, B. 635, × × ˊ | ˊ ×
(2) **ēode gold-hroden**, B. 641, × × ˊ | ˋ ×
(1) **gemyne mǣrðo**, B. 660, × ˋ́× | ˊ ×
(1) **on þisse meodu-healle**, B. 639, × × × ˋ́× | ˊ ×
(2) **æt brimes nosan**, B. 2804, × ˋ́× | ˋ ×
(2) **æt Wealhþēon** [= **-þēowan**], B. 630, × ˊ | ˊ ×
(1) **geond lagulāde**, W. 3, × ˋ́× | ˊ ×
(1) **Swā cwæð eardstapa**, W. 6, × × ˊ | ˋ ×
(2) **ēalā byrnwiga**, W. 94, × × ˊ | ˋ ×
(2) **nō þǣr fela bringeð**, W. 54, × × ˋ́× | ˊ ×

4. Type D, $\begin{cases} \text{D}^1 & \acute{} \mid \acute{} \grave{} \times \\ \text{D}^2 & \acute{} \mid \acute{} \times \grave{} \end{cases}$

Both types of D may take one unaccented syllable between the two primary stresses (ˊ × | ˊ ˋ ×, ˊ × | ˊ × ˋ). The secondary stress in D^1 falls usually on the second syllable of a compound or derivative word, and this syllable (as in C) is frequently short.

(*a*) D^1 ˊ | ˊ ˋ ×

(1) **cwēn Hrōðgāres**, B. 614, ˊ | ˊ ˋ ×
(2) **dǣl ǣghwylcne**, B. 622, ˊ | ˊ ˋ ×
(1) **Bēowulf maðelode**, B. 632, ˊ × | ˋ́× ˋ ×
(2) **slāt unwearnum**, B. 742, ˊ | ˊ ˋ ×
(1) **wrāþra wælsleahta**, W. 7, ˊ × | ˊ ˋ ×
(1) **wōd wintercearig** [= **wint'rcearig**], W. 24, ˊ | ˊ ˋ ×
(1) **sōhte sęle drēorig**, W. 25, ˊ × | ˋ́× ˋ ×
(1) **ne sōhte searo-nīðas**, B. 2739, × | ˊ × | ˋ́× ˋ ×

Note. — There is one instance in the texts (B. 613, (1)) of apparent ˊ × × | ˊ ˋ ×: **word wǣron wynsume**. (The triple alliteration has no significance. The sense, besides, precludes our stressing **wǣron**.) The difficulty is avoided by bringing the line under the A type: ˊ × × | ˊ ˋ́×.

(*b*) D² ◡ | ◡ × ◡

(2) **Forð nēar ætstōp**, B. 746, ◡ | ◡ × ◡
(2) **eorl furður stōp**, B. 762, ◡ | ◡ × ◡
(2) **Dęnum eallum wearð**, B. 768, ◡́ × | ◡ × ◡
(1) **grētte Gēata lēod**, B. 626, ◡ × | ◡ × ◡
(1) **ænig yrfe-weard**, B. 2732, ◡ × | ◡ × ◡
(1) **hrēosan hrīm and snāw**, W. 48, ◡ × | ◡ × ◡
(2) **swimmað eft on weg**, W. 53, ◡ × | ◡ × ◡

Very rarely is the thesis in the second foot expanded.

(2) **þegn ungemete till**, B. 2722, ◡ | ◡ × × × ◡
(1) **hrūsan heolster biwrāh**, W. 23, ◡ × | ◡ × × ◡

5. Type E, { E¹ ◡ ◡ × | ◡ ; E² ◡ × ◡ | ◡

The secondary stress in E¹ falls frequently on a short syllable, as in D¹.

(*a*) E¹ ◡ ◡ × | ◡

(1) **wyrmlīcum fāh**, W. 98, ◡ ◡ × | ◡
(2) **medo-ful ætbær**, B. 625, ◡́ ◡̆ × | ◡
(1) **sǣ-bāt gesæt**, B.634, ◡ ◡ × | ◡
(1) **sige-folca swēg**, B. 645, ◡́ ◡ × | ◡
(2) **Norð-Dęnum stōd**, B. 784, ◡ ◡̆ × | ◡
(1) **fēond-grāpum fæst**, B. 637, ◡ ◡ × | ◡
(2) **wyn eal gedrēas**, W. 36, ◡ ◡ × | ◡
(2) **feor oft gemǫn**, W. 90, ◡ ◡ × | ◡

As in D², the thesis in the first foot is very rarely expanded.

(1) **wīn-ærnes geweald**, B. 655, ◡ ◡ × × | ◡
(1) **Hafa nū ǫnd geheald**, B. 659, ◡́ ◡ × × | ◡
(1) **searo-þǫncum besmiðod**, B. 776, ◡́ ◡ × × | ◡́

Note. — Our ignorance of Old English sentence-stress makes it impossible for us to draw a hard-and-fast line in all cases between D^2 and E^1. For example, in these half-lines (already cited),

wyn eal gedrēas
feor oft gemǫn
Forð nēar ætstōp

if we throw a strong stress on the adverbs that precede their verbs, the type is D^2. Lessen the stress on the adverbs and increase it on the verbs, and we have E^1. The position of the adverbs furnishes no clue; for the order of words in Old English was governed not only by considerations of relative emphasis, but by syntactic and euphonic considerations as well.

(*b*) E^2 ⩤ × ⩥ | ⩤

This is the rarest of all types. It does not occur in the texts, there being but one instance of this type (l. 2437 (2)), and that doubtful, in the whole of *Beowulf*.

Abnormal Lines.

The lines that fall under none of the five types enumerated are comparatively few. They may be divided into two classes, (1) hypermetrical lines, and (2) defective lines.

(1) Hypermetrical Lines.

Each hypermetrical half-line has usually three stresses, thus giving six stresses to the whole line instead of two. These lines occur chiefly in groups, and mark increased range and dignity in the thought. Whether the half-line be first or second, it is usually of the A type without anacrusis. To this type belong the last five lines of the *Wanderer*. Lines 92 and 93 are also unusually long, but not hypermetrical. The

first half-line of 65 is hypermetrical, a fusion of A and C, consisting of (◡ × × × ◡̲ | ◡ ×).

(2) Defective Lines.

The only defective lines in the texts are B. 748 and 2715 (the second half-line in each). As they stand, these half-lines would have to be scanned thus:

rǣhte ongēan	◡ × | × ◡
bealo-nīð wēoll	◡̲× ≻ | ◡

Sievers emends as follows:

rǣhte tōgēanes	◡ × × | ◡ ×	= **A**
bealo-nīðe wēoll	◡̲× ≻ × | ◡	= **E**[1]

These defective half-lines are made up of syntactic combinations found on almost every page of Old English prose. That they occur so rarely in poetry is strong presumptive evidence, if further evidence were needed, in favor of the adequacy of Sievers' five-fold classification.

Note. — All the lines that could possibly occasion any difficulty to the student have been purposely cited as illustrations under the different types. If these are mastered, the student will find it an easy matter to scan the lines that remain.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

VI. EXTRACTS FROM BEOWULF.

The Banquet in Heorot. [Lines 612–662.]

[The Heyne-Socin text has been closely followed. I have attempted no original emendations, but have deviated from the Heyne-Socin edition in a few cases where the Grein-Wülker text seemed to give the better reading.

The argument preceding the first selection is as follows: Hrothgar, king of the Danes, or Scyldings, elated by prosperity, builds a magnificent hall in which to feast his retainers; but a monster, Grendel by name, issues from his fen-haunts, and night after night carries off thane after thane from the banqueting hall. For twelve years these ravages continue. At last Beowulf, nephew of Hygelac, king of the Geats (a people of South Sweden), sails with fourteen chosen companions to Dane-land, and offers his services to the aged Hrothgar. "Leave me alone in the hall to-night," says Beowulf. Hrothgar accepts Beowulf's proffered aid, and before the dread hour of visitation comes, the time is spent in wassail. The banquet scene follows.]

1 Þǣr wæs hæleþa hleahtor, hlyn swynsode,
2 word wǣron wynsume. Ēode Wealhþēow forð,
3 cwēn Hrōðgāres, cynna gemyndig;
4 grētte gold-hroden guman on healle,
5 ǫnd þā frēolīc wīf ful gesealde
6 ǣrest Ēast-Dęna ēþel-wearde,
7 bæd hine blīðne æt þǣre bēor-þęge,
8 lēodum lēofne; hē on lust geþeah
9 symbel ǫnd sęle-ful, sige-rōf kyning.
10 Ymb-ēode þā ides Helminga
11 duguðe ǫnd geogoðe dǣl ǣghwylcne,

1 sinc-fato sealde, oð þæt sæl ālamp
2 þæt hīo[1] Bēowulfe, bēag-hroden cwēn,
3 mōde geþungen, medo[2]-ful ætbær; [625]
4 grētte Gēata lēod, Gode þancode
5 wīs-fæst wordum, þæs þe hire se willa gelamp,
6 þæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelȳfde
7 fyrena frōfre. Hē þæt ful geþeah,
8 wæl-rēow wiga, æt Wealhþēon, [630]
9 ǫnd þā gyddode gūðe gefȳsed;
10 Bēowulf maðelode, bearn Ecgþēowes:
11 "Ic þæt hogode, þā ic on holm gestāh,
12 sæ-bāt gesæt mid mīnra sęcga gedriht,
13 þæt ic ānunga ēowra lēoda [635]
14 willan geworhte, oððe on wæl crunge
15 fēond-grāpum fæst. Ic gefręmman sceal
16 eorlīc ęllen, oððe ęnde-dæg
17 on þisse meodu[2]-healle mīnne gebīdan."
18 Þām wīfe þā word wel līcodon, [640]
19 gilp-cwide Gēates; ēode gold-hroden
20 frēolicu folc-cwēn tō hire frēan sittan.
21 Þā wæs eft swā ær inne on healle
22 þrȳð-word sprecen,[3] þēod on sælum,
23 sige-folca swēg, oþ þæt sęmninga [645]

---

1. **sinc-fato sealde**. Banning (*Die epischen Formeln im Beowulf*) shows that the usual translation, *gave costly gifts*, must be given up; or, at least, that the *costly gifts* are nothing more than *beakers of mead*. The expression is an epic formula for *passing the cup*.

16–17. **ęnde-dæg . . . mīnne**. This unnatural separation of noun and possessive is frequent in O.E. poetry, but almost unknown in prose.

19–20. **ēode . . . sittan**. The poet might have employed **tō sittanne** (§ **108**, (1)); but in poetry the infinitive is often used for the gerund. Alfred himself uses the infinitive or the gerund to express purpose after **gān**, **gǫngan**, **cuman**, and **sęndan**.

sunu Healfdęnes sēcean wolde
æfen-ræste; wiste þæm āhlæcan[4]
tō þæm hēah-sęle hilde geþinged,
siððan hīe sunnan lēoht gesēon *ne* meahton
oððe nīpende niht ofer ealle, [650]
scadu-helma gesceapu scrīðan cwōman,[5]
wan under wolcnum. Werod eall ārās;
grētte þā *giddum* guma ōðerne
Hrōðgār Bēowulf, ǫnd him hæl ābēad,
wīn-ærnes geweald, ǫnd þæt word ācwæð: [655]
"Næfre ic ænegum[6] męn ær ālȳfde,
siððan ic hǫnd ǫnd rǫnd hębban mihte,
ðrȳþ-ærn Dęna būton þē nū þā.
Hafa nū ǫnd geheald hūsa sēlest,
gemyne mærþo,[7] mægen-ęllen cȳð, [660]
waca wið wrāðum. Ne bið þē wilna gād,
gif þū þæt ęllen-weorc aldre[8] gedīgest."

[1] = hēo. [4] = āglæcan. [7] = mærþe (acc. sing.).
[2] = medu-. [5] = cwōmon. [8] = ealdre (instr. sing.)
[3] = gesprecen. [6] = ænigum.

2-6. **wiste . . . cwōman.** A difficult passage, even with Thorpe's inserted **ne**; but there is no need of putting a period after **geþinged**, or of translating **oððe** by *and: He* (*Hrothgar*) *knew that battle was in store* (**geþinged**) *for the monster in the high hall, after* [= *as soon as*] *they could no longer see the sun's light, or* [= *that is*] *after night came darkening over all, and shadowy figures stalking.* The subject of **cwōman** [= **cwōmon**] is **niht** and **gesceapu**.

The student will note that the infinitive (**scrīðan**) is here employed as a present participle after a verb of motion (**cwōman**). This construction with **cuman** is frequent in prose and poetry. The infinitive expresses the kind of motion: **ic cōm drīfan** = *I came driving.*

THE FIGHT BETWEEN BEOWULF AND GRENDEL. [Lines 740–837.]

[The warriors all retire to rest except Beowulf. Grendel stealthily enters the hall. From his eyes gleams "a luster unlovely, likest to fire." The combat begins at once.]

1 Ne þæt se āglæca yldan þōhte, [740]
2 ac hē gefēng hraðe forman sīðe
3 slæpendne rinc, slāt unwearnum,
4 bāt bān-locan, blōd ēdrum dranc,
5 syn-snædum swealh; sōna hæfde
6 unlyfigendes eal gefeormod [745]
7 fēt ǫnd folma. Forð nēar ætstōp,
8 nam þā mid handa hige-þihtigne
9 rinc on ræste; rǣhte ongēan
10 fēond mid folme; hē onfēng hraþe
11 inwit-þancum ǫnd wið earm gesæt. [750]
12 Sōna þæt onfunde fyrena hyrde,
13 þæt hē ne mētte middan-geardes,
14 eorðan scēatta, on ęlran męn
15 mund-gripe māran; hē on mōde wearð

---

1. **þæt**, the direct object of **yldan**, refers to the contest about to ensue. Beowulf, in the preceding lines, was wondering how it would result.

7. **ætstōp**. The subject of this verb and of **nam** is Grendel; the subject of the three succeeding verbs (**rǣhte, onfēng, gesæt**) is Beowulf.

12–13. The O.E. poets are fond of securing emphasis or of stimulating interest by indirect methods of statement, by suggesting more than they affirm. This device often appears in their use of negatives (**ne**, l. 13; p. 140, l. 3; **nō**, p. 140, l. 1), and in the unexpected prominence that they give to some minor detail usually suppressed because understood; as where the narrator, wishing to describe the terror produced by Grendel's midnight visits to Heorot, says (ll. 138–139), "Then was it easy to find one who elsewhere, more commodiously, sought rest for himself." It is hard to believe that the poet saw nothing humorous in this point of view.

forht, on ferhðe ; nō þȳ ǣr fram mealhte. [755]
Hyge wæs him hin-fūs, wolde on heolster flēon,
sēcan dēofla gedræg ; ne wæs his drohtoð þǣr,
swylce hē on ealder[1]-dagum ǣr gemētte.
Gemunde þā se gōda mǣg Higelāces
ǣfen-spræce, ūp-lang āstōd [760]
ǫnd him fæste wiðfēng ; fingras burston ;
ęoten wæs ūt-weard ; eorl furþur stōp.
Mynte se mǣra, hwǣr hē mealhte swā,
wīdre gewindan ǫnd on weg þanon
flēon on fęn-hopu ; wiste his fingra geweald [765]
on grames grāpum. Þæt wæs gēocor sīð,
þæt se hearm-scaþa tō Heorute[2] ātēah.
Dryht-sęle dynede ; Dęnum eallum wearð
ceaster-būendum, cēnra gehwylcum,
eorlum ealu-scerwen. Yrre wǣron bēgen [770]

---

1. **nō . . . mealhte**, *none the sooner could he away.* The omission of a verb of motion after the auxiliaries **magan**, **mōtan**, **sculan**, and **willan** is very frequent. *Cf.* Beowulf's last utterance, p. 147, l. 17.

14. The lines that immediately follow constitute a fine bit of description by indication of effects. The two contestants are withdrawn from our sight; but we hear the sound of the fray crashing through the massive old hall, which trembles as in a blast; we see the terror depicted on the faces of the Danes as they listen to the strange sounds that issue from their former banqueting hall; by these sounds we, too, measure the progress and alternations of the combat. At last we hear only the "terror-lay" of Grendel, "lay of the beaten," and know that Beowulf has made good his promise at the banquet (**gilp gelǣsted**).

15. **cēnra gehwylcum**. The indefinite pronouns (§ **77**) may be used as adjectives, agreeing in case with their nouns; but they frequently, as here, take a partitive genitive: **ānra gehwylcum**, *to each one* (= *to each of ones*); **ǣnige** (instrumental) **þinga**, *for any thing* (= *for any of things*); **on healfa gehwone**, *into halves* (= *into each of halves*); **ealra dōgra gehwām**, *every day* (= *on each of all days*); **ūhtna gehwylce**, *every morning* (= *on each of mornings*).

1 rēþe rēn-weardas. Ręced hlynsode;
2 þā wæs wundor micel, þæt se wīn-sęle
3 wiðhæfde heaþo-dēorum, þæt hē on hrūsan ne fēol,
4 fæger fold-bold; ac hē þæs fæste wæs
5 innan ǫnd ūtan īren-bęndum [775]
6 searo-þǫncum besmiðod. Þǣr fram sylle ābēag
7 medu-bęnc mǫnig, mīne gefrǣge,
8 golde geregnad, þǣr þā graman wunnon;
9 þæs ne wēndon ǣr witan Scyldinga,
10 þæt hit ā mid gemete manna ǣnig, [780]
11 betlīc ǫnd bān-fāg, tōbrecan meahte,
12 listum tōlūcan, nymþe līges fæðm
13 swulge on swaþule. Swēg ūp āstāg
14 nīwe geneahhe; Norð-Dęnum stōd
15 atelīc ęgesa, ānra gehwylcum, [785]
16 þāra þe of wealle wōp gehȳrdon,
17 gryre-lēoð galan Godes ǫndsacan,
18 sige-lēasne sang, sār wānigean
19 hęlle hæfton.[3] Hēold hine fæste,
20 sē þe manna wæs mægene strǫngest [790]
21 on þǣm dæge þysses līfes.
22 Nolde eorla hlēo ǣnige þinga
23 þone cwealm-cuman cwicne forlǣtan,
24 nē his līf-dagas lēoda ǣnigum

---

10. Notice that **hit**, the object of **tōbrecan**, stands for **wīn-sęle**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2. **Manna** is genitive after **gemete**, not after **ǣnig**.

17–19. **gryre-lēoð** . . . **hæfton** [= **hæftan**]. Note that verbs of hearing and seeing, as in Mn.E., may be followed by the infinitive. They heard *God's adversary sing* (**galan**) . . . *hell's captive bewail* (**wānigean**). Had the present participle been used, the effect would have been, as in Mn.E., to emphasize the agent (the subject of the infinitive) rather than the action (the infinitive itself).

1 nytte tealde. Þǽr genehost brægd [795]
2 eorl Bēowulfes ealde lāfe,
3 wolde frēa-drihtnes feorh ealgian,
4 mǽres þēodnes, ðǽr hīe meahton swā.
5 Hīe ðæt ne wiston, þā hīe gewin drugon,
6 heard-hicgende hilde-męcgas, [800]
7 ǫnd on healfa gehwone hēawan þōhton,
8 sāwle sēcan: þone syn-scaðan
9 ǽnig ofer eorðan īrenna cyst,
10 gūþ-billa nān, grētan nolde;
11 ac hē sige-wǽpnum forsworen hæfde, [805]
12 ęcga gehwylcre. Scolde his aldor[4]-gedāl
13 on ðǽm dæge þysses līfes
14 earmlīc wurðan[5] ǫnd se ęllor-gāst
15 on fēonda geweald feor sīðian.
16 Þā þæt onfunde, sē þe fela ǽror [810]
17 mōdes myrðe manna cynne
18 fyrene gefręmede (hē *wæs* fāg wið God),
19 þæt him se līc-hǫma lǽstan nolde,
20 ac hine se mōdega[6] mǽg Hygelāces
21 hæfde be hǫnda; wæs gehwæþer ōðrum [815]
22 lifigende lāð. Līc-sār gebād
23 atol ǽglǽca[7]; him on eaxle wearð

1–2. **þǽr . . . lāfe.** Beowulf's followers now seem to have seized their swords and come to his aid, not knowing that Grendel, having forsworn war-weapons himself, is proof against the best of swords. *Then many an earl of Beowulf's* (= *an earl of B. very often*) *brandished his sword.* That no definite earl is meant is shown by the succeeding **hīe meahton** instead of **hē meahte**. See p. 110, Note.

5. *They did not know this* (**ðæt**), *while they were fighting;* but the first **Hīe** refers to the warriors who proffered help; the second **hīe**, to the combatants, Beowulf and Grendel. In apposition with **ðæt**, stands the whole clause, **þone synscaðan** (object of **grētan**) . . . **nolde**. The second, or conjunctional, **ðæt** is here omitted before **þone**. See p. 112, note on ll. 18–19.

1 syn-dolh sweotol; seonowe onsprungon;
2 burston bān-locan. Bēowulfe wearð
3 gūð-hrēð gyfeðe. Scolde Grendel þonan [820]
4 feorh-sēoc flēon under fen-hleoðu,[8]
5 sēcean wyn-lēas wīc; wiste þē geornor,
6 þæt his aldres[9] wæs ende gegongen,
7 dōgera dæg-rīm. Denum eallum wearð
8 æfter þām wæl-ræse willa gelumpen. [825]
9 Hæfde þā gefælsod, sē þe ær feorran cōm,
10 snotor ond swȳð-ferhð, sele Hrōðgāres,
11 genered wið nīðe. Niht-weorce gefeh,
12 ellen-mærþum; hæfde Ēast-Denum
13 Gēat-mecga lēod gilp gelæsted; [830]
14 swylce oncȳðde ealle gebētte,
15 inwid-sorge, þe hīe ær drugon
16 ond for þrēa-nȳdum þolian scoldon,
17 torn unlȳtel. Þæt wæs tācen sweotol,
18 syððan hilde-dēor hond ālegde, [835]
19 earm ond eaxle (þær wæs eal geador
20 Grendles grāpe) under gēapne hrōf.

[1] = ealdor-. [4] = ealdor-. [7] = āglæca.
[2] = Heorote. [5] = weorðan. [8] = -hliðu.
[3] = hæftan. [6] = mōdiga. [9] = ealdres.

Beowulf Fatally Wounded. [Lines 2712–2752.]

[Hrothgar, in his gratitude for the great victory, lavishes gifts upon Beowulf; but Grendel's mother must be reckoned with. Beowulf finds her at the sea-bottom, and after a desperate struggle slays her. Hrothgar again pours treasures into Beowulf's lap. Beowulf, having now accomplished his mission, returns to Sweden. After a reign of fifty years, he goes forth to meet a fire-spewing dragon that is ravaging his kingdom. In the struggle Beowulf is fatally wounded. Wiglaf, a loyal thane, is with him.]

---

20. **grāpe** = genitive singular, feminine, after **eal**.

1 Þā sīo[1] wund ongǫn,
2 þe him se eorð-draca ār geworhte,
3 swēlan ǫnd swellan. Hē þæt sōna onfand,
4 þæt him on brēostum bealo-nīð wēoll [2715]
5 āttor on innan. Þā se æðeling gīong,[2]
6 þæt hē bī wealle, wīs-hycgende,
7 gesæt on sesse; seah on ǫnta geweorc,
8 hū þā stān-bogan stapulum fæste
9 ēce eorð-rǫced innan healde. [2720]
10 Hyne þā mid handa heoro-drēorigne,
11 þēoden mærne, þegn ungemete till,
12 wine-dryhten his wætere gelafede,
13 hilde-sædne, ǫnd his helm onspēon.
14 Bīowulf[3] maðelode; hē ofer bǫnne spræc, [2725]

---

5. **se æðeling** is Beowulf.

7. **ǫnta geweorc** is a stereotyped phrase for anything that occasions wonder by its size or strangeness.

9. **healde.** Heyne, following Ettmüller, reads **hēoldon**, thus arbitrarily changing mood, tense, and number of the original. Either mood, indicative or subjunctive, would be legitimate. As to the tense, the narrator is identifying himself in time with the hero, whose wonder was "how the stone-arches . . . *sustain* the ever-during earth-hall": the construction is a form of *oratio recta*, a sort of *miratio recta*. The singular **healde**, instead of **healden**, has many parallels in the dependent clauses of *Beowulf*, most of these being relative clauses introduced by **þāra þe** (= *of those that* . . . + a singular predicate). In the present instance, the predicate has doubtless been influenced by the proximity of **eorð-rǫced**, a *quasi*-subject; and we have no more right to alter to **healden** or **hēoldon** than we have to change Shakespeare's *gives* to *give* in

> "Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath *gives*."
> (*Macbeth*, II, i, 61.)

11. The **þegn ungemete till** is Wiglaf, the bravest of Beowulf's retainers.

14. **hē ofer bǫnne spræc.** The editors and translators of *Beowulf* invariably render **ofer** in this passage by *about;* but Beowulf

wunde wæl-blēate; wisse hē gearwe,
þæt hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde
eorðan wynne; þā wæs eall sceacen
dōgor-gerīmes, dēað ungemete nēah:
"Nū ic suna mīnum syllan wolde [2730]
gūð-gewǣdu, þǣr mē gifeðe swā
ǣnig yrfe-weard æfter wurde
līce gelęnge. Ic ðās lēode hēold
fīftig wintra; næs se folc-cyning
ymbe-sittendra ǣnig þāra, [2735]
þe mec gūð-winum grētan dorste,
ęgesan ðēon. Ic on earde bād
mǣl-gesceafta, hēold mīn tela,
nē sōhte searo-nīðas, nē mē swōr fela
āða on unriht. Ic ðæs ealles mæg, [2740]
feorh-bęnnum sēoc, gefēan habban;
for-þām mē wītan ne ðearf Waldend[4] fīra
morðor-bealo[5] māga, þonne mīn sceaceð
līf of līce. Nū ðū lungre geong[6]
hord scēawian under hārne stān, [2745]
Wīglāf lēofa, nū se wyrm ligeð,
swefeð sāre wund, since berēafod.

---

says not a word about his wound. The context seems to me to show plainly that **ofer** (cf. Latin *supra*) denotes here opposition = *in spite of*. We read in *Genesis*, l. 594, that Eve took the forbidden fruit **ofer Drihtenes word**. Beowulf fears (l. 2331) that he may have ruled unjustly = **ofer ealde riht**; and he goes forth (l. 2409) **ofer willan** to confront the dragon.

6–8. **þǣr mē . . . gelęnge**, *if so be that* (**þǣr . . . swā**) *any heir had afterwards been given me* (**mē gifeðe . . . æfter wurde**) *belonging to my body.*

19–20. **geong** [= **gǫng**] . . . **scēawian**. See note on **ēode . . . sittan**, p. 137, ll. 19–20. In Mn.E. *Go see*, *Go fetch*, etc., is the second verb imperative (coördinate with the first), or subjunctive (*that you may see*), or infinitive without *to*?

1 Bīo[7] nū on ofoste, þæt ic ǣr-welan,
2 gold-ǣht ongite, gearo scēawige
3 swegle searo-gimmas, þæt ic ðȳ sēft mæge [2750]
4 æfter māððum-welan mīn ālǣtan
5 līf ǫnd lēod-scipe, þone ic lǫnge hēold."

[1] = sēo. [2] = gēong. [3] = Bēowulf. [4] = Wealdend. [5] = morðor-bealu. [6] = gǫng (gang). [7] = Bēo.

Beowulf's Last Words. [Lines 2793–2821.]

[Wiglaf brings the jewels, the tokens of Beowulf's triumph. Beowulf, rejoicing to see them, reviews his career, and gives advice and final directions to Wiglaf.]

6 *Bīowulf*[1] *maðelode,*
7 gǫmel on giohðe (gold scēawode):
8 "Ic þāra frætwa Frēan ealles ðanc, [2795]
9 Wuldur-cyninge, wordum sęcge
10 ēcum Dryhtne, þe ic hēr on starie,
11 þæs þe ic mōste mīnum lēodum
12 ǣr swylt-dæge swylc gestrȳnan.
13 Nū ic on māðma hord mīne bebohte [2800]

4–5. **mīn . . . līf.** See note on **ǫnde-dæg . . . mīnne**, p. 137, ll. 16–17.

8–12. The expression **sęcgan þanc** takes the same construction as **þancian**; i.e., the dative of the person (**Frēan**) and the genitive (a genitive of cause) of the thing (**þāra frætwa**). Cf. note on **biddan**, p. 45. The antecedent of **þe** is **frætwa**. For the position of **on**, see § **94**, (5). The clause introduced by **þæs þe** (*because*) is parallel in construction with **frætwa**, both being causal modifiers of **sęcge þanc**. The Christian coloring in these lines betrays the influence of priestly transcribers.

13. *Now that I, in exchange for* (**on**) *a hoard of treasures, have bartered* (**bebohte**) *the laying down* (**-lęge** > **licgan**) *of my old life.* The ethical codes of the early Germanic races make frequent mention of blood-payments, or life-barters. There seems to be here a suggestion of the "wergild."

frōde feorh-lęge, fręmmað gē nū
lēoda þearfe; ne mæg ic hēr lęng wesan.
Hātað heaðo-mǣre hlǣw gewyrcean,
beorhtne æfter bǣle æt brimes nosan;
sē scel[2] tō gemyndum mīnum lēodum [2805]
hēah hlīfian on Hrǫnes næsse,
þæt hit sǣ-līðend syððan hātan[3]
Bīowulfes[1] biorh[1] þā þe brentingas
ofer flōda genipu feorran drīfað."
Dyde him of healse hring gyldenne [2810]
þīoden[1] þrīst-hȳdig; þegne gesealde,
geongum gār-wigan, gold-fāhne helm,
bēah ǫnd byrnan, hēt hyne brūcan well.
"Þū eart ęnde-lāf ūsses cynnes,
Wǣgmundinga; ealle wyrd forswēop [2815]
mīne māgas tō metod-sceafte,
eorlas on ęlne; ic him æfter sceal."
Þæt wæs þām gǫmelan gingeste word
brēost-gehygdum, ǣr hē bǣl cure,

---

1. **fręmmað gē**. The plural imperative (as also in **Hātað**) shows that Beowulf is here speaking not so much to Wiglaf in particular as, through Wiglaf, to his retainers in general, — to his *comitatus*.

6. The desire for conspicuous burial places finds frequent expression in early literatures. The tomb of Achilles was situated "high on a jutting headland over wide Hellespont that it might be seen from off the sea." Elpenor asks Ulysses to bury him in the same way. Æneas places the ashes of Misenus beneath a high mound on a headland of the sea.

7. **hit** = **hlǣw**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2.

10–11. **him . . . þīoden**. The reference in both cases is to Beowulf, who is disarming himself (ðu-of > *doff*) for the last time; **þegne** = *to Wiglaf*.

Note, where the personal element is strong, the use of the dative instead of the more colorless possessive; **him of healse**, not **of his healse**.

17. **ic . . . sceal**. See note on **nō . . . meahte**, p. 140, l. 1.

1 hāte heaðo-wylmas; him of hreðre gewāt [2820]
2 sāwol sēcean sōð-fæstra dōm.

[1] īo, io = ēo, eo. [2] = sceal. [3] = hāten.

VII. THE WANDERER.

[Exeter MS. "The epic character of the ancient lyric appears especially in this: that the song is less the utterance of a momentary feeling than the portrayal of a lasting state, perhaps the reflection of an entire life, generally that of one isolated, or bereft by death or exile of protectors and friends." (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.) I adopt Brooke's threefold division (*Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 356): "It opens with a Christian prologue, and closes with a Christian epilogue, but the whole body of the poem was written, it seems to me, by a person who thought more of the goddess Wyrd than of God, whose life and way of thinking were uninfluenced by any distinctive Christian doctrine."

The author is unknown.]

Prologue.

3 Oft him ānhaga āre gebīdeð,
4 Metudes[1] miltse, þēah þe hē mōdcearig
5 geond lagulāde lǫnge sceolde
6 hrēran mid hǫndum hrīmcealde sǣ,
7 wadan wræclāstas: wyrd bið ful ārǣd! [5]
8 Swā cwæð eardstapa earfeþa[2] gemyndig,
9 wrāþra wælsleahta, winemǣga hryres:

Plaint of the Wanderer.

10 "Oft ic sceolde āna ūhtna gehwylce
11 mīne ceare cwīþan; nis nū cwicra nān,

---

1. **him of hreðre.** Cf. note on **him . . . þīoden**, p. 147, ll. 10–11.

1-2. For construction of **gewāt . . . sēcean**, see note on **ēode . . . sittan**, p. 137, ll. 19–20.

9. The MS. reading is **hryre** (nominative), which is meaningless.

10. For **ūhtna gehwylce**, see note on **cēnra gehwylcum**, p. 140.

1 þe ic him mōdsefan ·mīnne durre [10]
2 sweotule[3] āsęcgan. Ic tō sōþe wāt
3 þæt biþ in eorle indryhten þēaw,
4 þæt hē his ferðlocan fæste binde,
5 healde his hordcofan, hycge swā hē wille;
6 ne mæg wērig mōd wyrde wiðstǫndan [15]
7 nē sē hrēo hyge helpe gefręmman:
8 for ðon dōmgeorne drēorigne oft
9 in hyra brēostcofan bindað fæste.
10 Swā ic mōdsefan mīnne sceolde
11 oft earmcearig ēðle bidǣled, [20]
12 frēomǣgum feor feterum sǣlan,
13 siþþan gēara iū goldwine mīnne
14 hrūsan heolster biwrāh, and ic hēan þǫnan
15 wōd wintercearig ofer waþema gebind,
16 sōhte sęle drēorig sinces bryttan, [25]
17 hwǣr ic feor oþþe nēah findan meahte
18 þone þe in meoduhealle[4] miltse wisse
19 oþþe mec frēondlēasne frēfran wolde,
20 węnian mid wynnum. Wāt sē þe cunnað
21 hū slīþen bið sorg tō gefēran [30]
22 þām þe him lȳt hafað lēofra geholena:
23 warað hine wræclāst, nāles wunden gold,
24 ferðloca frēorig, nālæs foldan blǣd;
25 gemǫn hē sęlesęcgas and sincþęge,
26 hū hine on geoguðe his goldwine [35]
27 węnede tō wiste: wyn eal gedrēas!

---

1. **þe . . . him.** See § **75** (4). Cf. *Merchant of Venice,* II, 5, 50–51.

18. For **mine** (MS. **in**), which does not satisfy metrical requirements, I adopt Kluge's plausible substitution of **miltse**; **miltse witan** = *to show* (*know*, *feel*), *pity.* The **myne wisse** of *Beowulf* (l. 169) is metrically admissible.

1 For þon wāt sē þe sceal his winedryhtnes
2 lēofes lārcwidum lǫnge forþolian,
3 ðonne sorg and slǣp sǫmod ætgædre
4 earmne ānhagan oft gebindað: [40]
5 þinceð him on mōde þæt hē his mǫndryhten
6 clyppe and cysse, and on cnēo lęcge
7 hǫnda and hēafod, swā hē hwīlum ǣr
8 in gēardagum giefstōles brēac;
9 ðonne onwæcneð eft winelēas guma, [45]
10 gesihð him biforan fealwe wǣgas,
11 baþian brimfuglas, brǣdan feþra,
12 hrēosan hrīm and snāw hagle gemęnged.
13 Ðonne bēoð þȳ hęfigran heortan bęnne,
14 sāre æfter swǣsne; sorg bið genīwad; [50]
15 þonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð,
16 grēteð glīwstafum, georne geondscēawað.
17 Sęcga geseldan swimmað eft on weg;
18 flēotendra ferð[5] nō þǣr fela bringeð
19 cūðra cwidegiedda; cearo[6] bið genīwad [55]

---

1. The object of **wāt** is **þinceð him on mōde**; but the construction is unusual, inasmuch as both **þæt**'s (**þæt** pronominal before **wāt** and **þæt** conjunctional before **þinceð**) are omitted. See p. 112, ll. 18–19.

5. **þinceð him on mōde** (see note on **him . . . þīoden**, p. 147). "No more sympathetic picture has been drawn by an Anglo-Saxon poet than where the wanderer in exile falls asleep at his oar and dreams again of his dead lord and the old hall and revelry and joy and gifts, — then wakes to look once more upon the waste of ocean, snow and hail falling all around him, and sea-birds dipping in the spray." (Gummere, *Germanic Origins*, p. 221.)

17–19. **Sęcga . . . cwidegiedda** = *But these comrades of warriors* [= those seen in vision] *again swim away* [= *fade away*]; *the ghost of these fleeting ones brings not there many familiar words;* i.e. he sees in dream and vision the old familiar faces, but no voice is heard: they bring neither greetings to him nor tidings of themselves.

1 þām þe sęndan sceal swīþe geneahhe
2 ofer waþema gebind wērigne sefan.
3 For þon ic geþęncan ne mæg geond þās woruld
4 for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce,
5 þonne ic eorla līf eal geondþęnce, [60]
6 hū hī fǣrlīce flęt ofgēafon,
7 mōdge maguþegnas. Swā þēs middangeard
8 ealra dōgra gehwām drēoseð and fealleþ;
9 for þon ne mæg weorþan wīs wer, ǣr hē āge
10 wintra dǣl in woruldrīce. Wita sceal geþyldig, [65]
11 ne sceal nō tō hātheort nē tō hrædwyrde,
12 nē tō wāc wiga nē tō wanhȳdig,
13 nē tō forht nē tō fægen nē tō feohgīfre,
14 nē nǣfre gielpes tō georn, ǣr hē geare cunne.
15 Beorn sceal gebīdan, þonne hē bēot spriceð, [70]
16 oþ þæt collenferð cunne gearwe
17 hwider hreþra gehygd hweorfan wille.
18 Ongietan sceal glēaw hæle hū gǣstlīc bið,
19 þonne eall þisse worulde wela wēste stęndeð,
20 swā nū missenlīce geond þisne middangeard [75]
21 winde biwāune[7] weallas stęndaþ,

---

10. **Wita sceal geþyldig**. Either **bēon** (**wesan**) is here to be understood after **sceal**, or **sceal** alone means *ought to be*. Neither construction is to be found in Alfredian prose, though the omission of a verb of motion after **sculan** is common in all periods of Old English. See note on **nō . . . meahte**, p. 140.

20. **swā nū**. "The Old English lyrical feeling," says Ten Brink, citing the lines that immediately follow **swā nū**, "is fond of the image of physical destruction"; but I do not think these lines have a merely figurative import. The reference is to a period of real devastation, antedating the Danish incursions. "We might fairly find such a time in that parenthesis of bad government and of national tumult which filled the years between the death of Aldfrith in 705 and the renewed peace of Northumbria under Ceolwulf in the years that followed 729." (Brooke, *Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 355.)

hrīme bihrorene,[8] hryðge þā ederas.
Wōriað þā wīnsalo,[9] waldend licgað
drēame bidrorene[10]; duguð eal gecrǫng
wlǫnc bī wealle: sume wīg fornōm, [80]
fęrede in forðwege; sumne fugel[11] oþbær
ofer hēanne holm; sumne sē hāra wulf
dēaðe gedǣlde; sumne drēorighlēor
in eorðscræfe eorl gehȳdde:
ȳþde swā þisne eardgeard ælda Scyppend, [85]
oþ þæt burgwara breahtma lēase
eald ęnta geweorc īdlu stōdon.
Sē þonne þisne wealsteal wīse geþōhte,
and þis dēorce līf dēope geondþęnceð,
frōd in ferðe[12] feor oft gemǫn [90]
wælsleahta worn, and þās word ācwið:
'Hwǣr cwōm mearg? hwǣr cwōm mago[13]? hwǣr cwōm māþþumgyfa?
hwǣr cwōm symbla gesetu? hwǣr sindon sęledrēamas?
Ēalā beorht bune! ēalā byrnwiga!
ēalā þēodnes þrym! hū sēo þrāg gewāt, [95]
genāp under nihthelm, swā hēo nō wǣre!
Stǫndeð nū on lāste lēofre duguþe
weal wundrum hēah, wyrmlīcum fāh:
eorlas fornōmon asca þrȳþe,

---

17. **cwōm . . . gesetu.** Ettmüller reads **cwōmon**; but see p. 107, note on **wæs . . . þā īgland.** The occurrence of **hwǣr cwōm** three times in the preceding line tends also to hold **cwōm** in the singular when its plural subject follows. Note the influence of a somewhat similar structural parallelism in *seas hides* of these lines (*Winter's Tale*, IV, iv, 500–502):

> "Not for . . . all the *sun sees* or
> The close *earth wombs* or the profound *seas hides*
> In unknown fathoms, will I break my oath."

1 wǣpen wælgīfru, wyrd sēo mǣre; [100]
2 and þās stānhleoþu[14] stormas cnyssað;
3 hrīð hrēosende hrūsan bindeð,
4 wintres wōma, þonne wǫn cymeð,
5 nīpeð nihtscūa, norþan onsęndeð
6 hrēo hæglfare hæleþum on andan. [105]
7 Eall is earfoðlīc eorþan rīce,
8 onwęndeð wyrda gesceaft weoruld under heofonum:
9 hēr bið feoh lǣne, hēr bið frēond lǣne,
10 hēr bið mǫn lǣne, hēr bið mǣg lǣne;
11 eal þis eorþan gesteal īdel weorþeð!'" [110]

EPILOGUE.

12 Swā cwæð snottor on mōde, gesæt him sundor æt rūne.
13 Til biþ sē þe his trēowe gehealdeð; ne sceal nǣfre his torn tō rycene
14 beorn of his brēostum ācȳþan, nemþe hē ǣr þā bōte cunne;
15 eorl mid ęlne gefręmman. Wel bið þām þe him āre sēceð,
16 frōfre tō Fæder on heofonum, þǣr ūs eal sēo fæstnung stǫndeð. [115]

1 = Metodes.
2 = earfoþa.
3 = sweotole.
4 = medu-.
5 = ferhð.
6 = cearu.
7 See bewāwan.
8 See behrēosan.
9 = wīnsalu.
10 See bedrēosan.
11 = fugol.
12 = ferhðe.
13 = magu.
14 = -hliðu.

12. **gesæt . . . rūne**, *sat apart to himself in silent meditation.*
15. **eorl . . . gefręmman**. Supply **sceal** after **eorl**.

I. GLOSSARY.

OLD ENGLISH — MODERN ENGLISH.

[The order of words is strictly alphabetical, except that **ð** follows **t**. The combination **æ** follows **ad**.

Gender is indicated by the abbreviations, m. (= masculine), f. (= feminine), n. (= neuter). The usual abbreviations are employed for the cases, nom., gen., dat., acc., and instr. Other abbreviations are sing. (= singular), pl. (= plural), ind. (= indicative mood), sub. (= subjunctive mood), pres. (= present tense), pret. (= preterit tense), prep. (= preposition), adj. (= adjective), adv. (= adverb), part. (= participle), conj. (= conjunction), pron. (= pronoun), intrans. (= intransitive), trans. (= transitive).

Figures not preceded by § refer to page and line of the texts.]

A.

ā, *ever*, *always*, *aye*.

abbudisse, f., *abbess* [Lat. abbatissa].

ābēodan (§ 109), *bid*, *offer*; **him hǣl ābēad** 138, 9 = *bade him hail*, *wished him health*.

ābrecan (§ 120, Note 2), *break down*, *destroy*.

ābūgan (§ 109, Note, 1), *give way*, *start* [bow away].

ac, conj., *but*.

ācweðan (§ 115), *say*, *speak*.

ācȳðan (§ 126), *reveal*, *proclaim* [**cūð**].

āð, m., *funeral pile*.

adesa, m., *adze*, *hatchet*.

æ (**æw**), f., *law*.

ædre (**ēdre**), f., *stream*, *canal*, *vein*; **blōd ēdrum dranc** 139, 4 = *drank blood in streams* (instr.).

æfæstnis, f., *piety*.

æfen-ræst, f., *evening rest*.

æfen-sprǣc, f., *evening speech*.

æfęst (**æwfęst**), *law-abiding*, *pious*.

æfęstnis, see **æfæstnis**.

æfre, *ever*, *always*.

æfter, prep. (§ 94, (1)), *after*; **æfter ðǣm**, *after that*, *thereafter*; **æfter ðǣm ðe**, conj., *after*.

æfter, adv., *after*, *afterwards*.

æghwā (§ 77, Note), *each*, *every*.

æghwilc (§ 77, Note), *each*, *any*.

æglǣca, see **āglǣca**.

ǣgðer (**ǣghwæðer, āðer**) (§ 77, Note), *each, either;* **ǣgðer . . . ōðer . . . ōðer,** *either . . . or . . . or;* **ǣgðer ge . . . ge** (§ 95, (2)), *both . . . and;* **ǣgðer ge . . . ge . . . ge,** *both . . . and . . . and.*

ǣht, f., *property, possession* [**āgan**].

ǣlc (§ 77), *each.*

ælde (**ielde**) (§ 47), m. pl., *men;* gen. pl., **ælda.**

ælmihtig, *almighty.*

ǣmetta, m., *leisure* [*empti*-ness].

ǣnig (§ 77), *any;* **ǣnige ðinga** 141, 22 = *for anything.* (See 140, 15, Note.)

ǣr, adv., *before, formerly, sooner;* **nō þȳ ǣr** 140, 1 = *none the sooner;* **ǣror**, comparative, *before, formerly;* **ǣrest**, superlative, *first.*

ǣr, conj. (§ 105, 2), *ere, before* = **ǣr ðǣm ðe.**

ǣr, prep. with dat., *before* (time); **ǣr ðǣm ðe,** conj. (§ 105, 2), *before.*

ærcebisceop, m., *archbishop* [Lat. archiepiscopus].

ǣrendgewrit, n., *message, letter.*

ǣrendwreca (**-raca**), m., *messenger.*

ǣrest, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *first.*

ærnan (§ 127), *ride, gallop* [**iernan**].

ǣrra, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *former.*

ǣrwela, m., *ancient wealth.*

æsc, m., *ash, spear;* gen. pl., **asca.**

Æscesdūn, f., *Ashdown* (in Berkshire).

æstel, m., *book-mark* [Lat. hastula].

æt (§ 94, (1)), *at, in;* with **leornian,** *to learn,* **geðicgan,** *to receive,* and other verbs of similar import, **æt** = *from:* 115, 18; 137, 8, etc.

ætberan (§ 114), *bear to, hand.*

ætgæd(e)re, adv., *together.*

ætsteppan (§ 116), *step up, advance;* pret. sing., **ætstōp.**

æðele, *noble, excellent.*

æðeling, m., *a noble, prince.*

Æðelwulfing, m., *son of Ethelwulf.*

Æðered, m., *Ethelred.*

āfeallan (§ 117), *fall.*

āfierran (§ 127), *remove* [**feor**].

āgan (§ 136), *to own, possess.*

āgen, adj.-part., *own;* dat. sing., **āgnum** [**āgan**].

āgiefan (§ 115), *give back.*

āglǣca (**ǣglǣca**), m., *monster, champion.*

āhton, see **āgan.**

ālǣtan (§ 117), *let go, leave.*

aldor, see **ealdor.**

ālęcgan (§ 125, Note), *lay down* [**licgan**]; past part., **ālēd.**

Ālīesend, m., *Redeemer* [**ālīesan** = *release, ransom*].

ālimpan (§ 110), *befall, occur.*

ālȳfan (§ 126), *entrust, permit.*

ambor, m., *measure;* gen. pl., **ambra** (§ 27, (4)).

ambyre, *favorable.*

ān (§ 89), *one;* **āna**, *alone, only;* **ānra gehwylcum** 141, 15 = *to each one.* (See 140, 15, Note.)

anda, m., *zeal, injury, indignation;* **hæleðum on andan** 153, 6 = *harmful to men.*

andēfn, f., *proportion, amount.*

andgiet (**-git**), n., *sense, meaning.*

andgitfullīce, *intelligibly;* **-gitfullīcost**, superlative.
andswaru, f., *answer.*
andwyrdan (§ 127), *to answer;* pret., **andwyrde.**
Angel, n., *Anglen* (in Denmark); dat. sing., **Angle** (§ 27 (4)).
Angelcynn, n., *English kin, English people, England.*
ānhaga (**-hoga**), m., *a solitary, wanderer* [**ān** + **hogian**, *to meditate*].
ānlīpig, *single, individual.*
ānunga (§ 93, (2)), *once for all* [**ān**].
apostol, m., *apostle* [Gr. ἀπόστολος].
ār, f., *honor, property, favor;* **āre gebīdeð** 148, 3 = *waits for divine favor* (gen.).
ārǣd, adj., *inexorable.*
ārǣdan (§ 126), *read.*
āręcc(e)an (§ 128), *translate, expound.*
ārfæstnis, f., *virtue.*
ārīsan (§ 102), *arise.*
asca, see **aesc.**
āsęcgan (§ 132), *say, relate.*
āsęttan (§ 127), *set, place.*
āsingan (§ 110), *sing.*
āspęndan (§ 127), *spend, expend.*
āstīgan (§ 102), *ascend, arise.*
āstǫndan (§ 116), *stand up.*
ātēah, see **ātēon.**
atelīc, *horrible, dire.*
ātēon (§ 118), *draw, draw away, take* (as a journey).
atol, *horrible, dire.*
āttor, n., *poison.*
ātuge, see **ātēon.**
āð, m., *oath.*
āðer, see **ǣgðer.**
āwęccan (§ 128), *awake, arouse;* pret. sing., **āweahte, āwęhte.**
aweg, *away.*
āwęndan (§ 127), *turn, translate.*
āwrītan (§ 102), *write, compose.*
āwyrcan (§ 128), *work, do, perform.*

B.

Bāchsęcg, m., *Bagsac.*
bæcbord, n., *larboard, left side of a ship.*
bǣl, n., *funeral fire, funeral pile.*
bān, n., *bone.*
bān-fāg, *adorned with bones* or *antlers.*
bān-loca, m., *flesh* [bone-locker].
Basengas, m. pl., *Basing* (in Hantshire).
be (**bī**) (§ 94, (1)), *by, about, concerning, near, along, according to;* **be norðan þǣm wēstenne** (§ 94, (4)), *north of the waste* (*desert*); **be fullan**, *fully, perfectly.*
bēag, see **būgan.**
bēag-hroden, *ring-adorned.*
bēah (**bēag**), m., *ring, bracelet, collar* [**būgan**].
bealo-nīð, m., *dire hatred, poison, venom.*
bearn, n., *child, son* [bairn].
bebēodan (§ 109), *command, bid, entrust* (with dat.).
bebīo-, see **bebēo-.**
bebohte, see **bebycgan.**
bebycgan (§ 128), *sell.*
bēc, see **bōc.**
becuman (§ 114), *come, arrive, befall.*
bedǣlan (§ 126), *separate, deprive.*

bedrēosan (§ 109), *deprive;* past part. pl., **bedrorene** (**bidrorene**) [dross, dreary].
befæstan (§ 127), *fasten, implant.*
befēolan (§ 110), *apply one's self;* **ðāra ðe ðā spēda hæbben ðæt hīe ðæm befēolan mægen** 119, 20 = *of those who have the means by which they may apply themselves to it.*
beforan, prep. with dat., *before.*
bēgen (declined like **twēgen**, § 89), *both.*
begeondan (**begiondan**), prep. with dat., *beyond.*
begietan (§ 115), *get, obtain, find.*
beginnan (§ 110), *begin.*
beheonan (**behionan**), prep. with dat., *on this side of.*
behreōsan (§ 109), *fall upon, cover;* past part. pl., **behrorene** (**bihrorene**).
belimpan (§ 110), *pertain, belong.*
beniman (§ 114), *take, derive.*
bęnn, f., *wound* [**bana** = *murderer*].
bēon (**bīon**) (§ 134), *be, consist.*
beorh (**beorg**, **biorh**), m., *mound* [barrow].
beorht, *bright, glorious.*
Beormas, m. pl., *Permians.*
beorn, m., *man, hero, chief.*
bēor-þęgu, f., *beer-drinking* [**þicgan** = *receive*].
bēot, n., *boast.*
beran (§ 114), *bear.*
berēafian (§ 130), *bereave;* **since berēafod** 145, 22 = *bereft of treasure.*
beren, adj., *of a bear, bear.*
berstan (§ 110), *burst, crack.*
besmiðian (§ 130), *make hard* (as at the forge of a smith).
bęt, see **wel** (§ 97, (2)).
bētan (§ 126), *make good, requite;* past. part. pl., **gebētte.**
bętera (**bętra**), see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).
betlīc, *excellent.*
bętsta, see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).
betuh (**betux**) (§ 94, (1)), *between.*
betwēonan (§ 94, (1)), *between.*
betȳnan (§ 126), *close, end* [**tūn** = *enclosure*].
bewāwan (§ 117), *blow upon;* past part. pl., **bewāune** (**biwāune**, **bewāwene**).
bewrēon (§ 118, 1), *enwrap;* pret. 3d sing., **bewrāh** (**biwrāh**).
bī, see **be.**
bi-, see **be-.**
bīdan (§ 102), *bide, await, expect, endure* (with gen.).
biddan (§ 115, Note 2), *bid, pray, request* (§ 65, Note 3); **bæd hine blīðne** 136, 7 = *bade him be blithe.*
bindan (§ 110), *bind.*
bīo, see **bēo** (imperative sing.).
bisceop (**biscep**), m., *bishop* [Lat. episcopus].
bisceop-stōl, m., *episcopal seat, bishopric.*
bisigu, f., *business, occupation;* dat. pl., **bisgum.**
bītan (§ 102), *bite, cut.*
biwrāh, see **bewrēon.**
blǣd, m., *glory, prosperity* [**blāwan** = *blow, inflate*].
Blēcinga-ēg, f., *Blekingen.*
bliss, f., *bliss* [**blīðe**].
blīðe, *blithe, happy.*

blōd, n., *blood.*
bōc (§ 68, (1), Note 1), f., *book.*
bōcere, m., *scribe* [**bōc**].
bọna (**bana**), m., *murderer* [bane].
bōt, f., *boot, remedy, help, compensation.*
brād (§ 96, (1)), *broad.*
brǣdan (§ 126), *extend, spread* [**brād**].
brǣdra, see **brād.**
brægd, see **bregdan.**
brēac, see **brūcan.**
breahtm, m., *noise, revelry;* **burgwara breahtma lēase** 152, 10 = *bereft of the revelries of citizens.*
bregdan (§ 110), *brandish, draw* [braid]; pret. ind. 3d sing., **brægd.**
brenting, m., *high ship.*
brēost, n., *breast* (the pl. has the same meaning as the sing.).
brēost-cofa, m., *breast-chamber, heart, mind.*
brēost-gehygd, n., *breast-thought, thought of the heart, emotion.*
brim, n., *sea, ocean.*
brimfugol, m., *sea-fowl.*
bringan (§ 128), *bring.*
brōhte, **brōhton**, see **bringan.**
brōðor (**brōður**) (§ 68, (2)), m., *brother.*
brūcan (§ 109, Note 1), *use, enjoy* (§ 62, Note 1; but Alfred frequently employs the acc. with **brūcan**).
brycg, f., *bridge.*
brȳcð, see **brūcan.**
brytta, m., *distributor, dispenser* [**brēotan** = *break in pieces*].
būan (§ 126, Note 2), *dwell, cultivate* [bower].
būde, see **būan.**
bufan, prep. with dat. and acc., *above.*
būgan (§ 109, Note 1), *bow, bend, turn.*
bune, f., *cup.*
burg (**burh**) (§ 68, (1), Note), f., *city, borough;* dat. sing., **byrig.**
Burgenda, m. gen. pl., *of the Burgundians;* **Burgenda land**, *Bornholm.*
burgware (§ 47), m. pl., *burghers, citizens.*
burh, see **burg.**
būtan (**būton**), prep. (§ 94, (1)), *without, except, except for, but.*
būtan (**būton**), conj., *except that, unless.*
būtū, *both* (= *both — two.* The word is compounded of the combined neuters of **bēgen** and **twēgen**, but is m. and f. as well as n.).
bȳn (§ 126, Note 2), *cultivated.*
byrde, adj., *of high rank, aristocratic.*
byrig, see **burg.**
byrne, f., *byrnie, corselet, coat of mail.*
byrnwiga, m., *byrnie-warrior, mailed soldier.*
byrð, see **beran.**

C.

canōn, m., *sacred canon, Bible* [Lat. canon, Gr. κανών].
cearu (**cearo**), f., *care.*
ceaster-būend, m., *castle-dweller.*
cēne, *keen, bold, brave.*

cēosan (§ 109), *choose, accept, encounter.*
cild, n., *child.*
cirice, f., *church ;* nom. pl., **ciricean.**
cirr (**cierr**), m., *turn, time, occasion* [char, chore, ajar = on char, on the turn].
cirran (§ 127), *turn.*
clǣne, *clean, pure.*
clǣne, adv., *entirely* ["clean out of the way," Shaks.].
clūdig, *rocky* [having boulders or masses like *clouds*].
clyppan (§ 127), *embrace, accept* [clip = clasp for letters, papers, etc.].
cnapa, m., *boy* [knave].
cnēo (**cnēow**), n., *knee ;* acc. pl., **cnēo.**
cniht, m., *knight, warrior.*
cnyssan (§ 125), *beat.*
collenferð (**-ferhð**), *proud-minded, fierce.*
costnung, f., *temptation.*
Crēcas (**Crēacas**), m. pl., *Greeks.*
cringan (§ 110), *cringe, fall.*
Crīst, m., *Christ.*
Crīsten, *Christian ;* nom. pl. m., **Crīstene, Crīstne.**
cuma, m., *new-comer, stranger.*
cuman (§ 114), *come.* (See p. 138, Note on ll. 2–6.)
cunnan (§ 137), *know, can, understand.*
cunnian (§ 130), *make trial of, experience* [**cunnan**].
cure, see **cēosan.**
cūð, *well-known, familiar* [past part. of **cunnan**: cf. uncouth].
cūðe, cūðen, cūðon, see **cunnan.**
cwǣden, cwǣdon, see **cweðan.**
cwalu, f., *death, murder* [**cwelan**].
cwealm-cuma, m., *murderous comer.*
cwelan (§ 114), *die* [to quail].
cwēn, f., *queen.*
Cwēnas, m. pl., *a Finnish tribe.*
cweðan (§ 115), *say, speak* [quoth, bequeath].
cwic, *living, alive* [quicksilver ; the quick and the dead].
cwidegiedd, n., *word, utterance* [**cweðan** and **gieddian**, both meaning *to speak*].
cwīðan (§ 126), *bewail* (trans.).
cwōm, see **cuman.**
cyle (**ciele**), m., *cold* [chill] ; **cyle gewyrcan** 110, 7 = *produce cold, freeze.*
cyme, m., *coming* [**cuman**].
cyn(n), n., *kin, race.*
cyn(n), adj. (used only in pl.), *fitting things, etiquette, proprieties, courtesies ;* **cynna gemyndig** 136, 3 = *mindful of courtesies.*
cynerīce, n., *kingdom.*
cyning, m., *king.*
cyssan (§ 125), *kiss.*
cyst, f., *the choice, the pick, the best* [**cēosan**].
cȳðan (§ 126), *make known, display*, [**cūð**] ; 2d sing. imperative, **cȳð.**

D.

dǣd, f., *deed.*
dæg, m., *day.*
dæg-hwīl, f., *day-while, day ;* **hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde eorðan wynne** 145, 2 = *he had spent his days of earth's joy.*

dæg-rīm, n., *number of days* [day-rime]; **dōgera daeg-rīm** 143, 7 = *the number of his days.*

dæl, n., *dale.*

dǣl, m., *part, deal, division.*

dēad, *dead.*

dēað, m., *death.*

dēman (§ 126), *deem, judge.*

Dęnamearc, see **Dęnemearc.**

Dęne (§ 47), m. pl., *Danes.*

Dęnemearc (**Dęnemearce**), f., *Denmark;* dat. sing., **Dęnemearce** (strong), **Dęnemearcan** (weak).

Dęnisc, *Danish;* **ðā Dęniscan**, *the Danes.*

dēofol, m. n., *devil;* gen. sing., **dēofles** (§ 27, (4)).

dēope, *deeply, profoundly* [**dēop**].

dēor, n., *wild animal* [deer].

deorc, *dark, gloomy.*

dōgor, n., *day;* gen. pl., **dōgora, dōgera, dōgra.**

dōgor-gerīm, n., *number of days, lifetime.*

dōm, m., *doom, judgment, glory.*

dōmgeorn, adj., *eager for glory* [*doom-yearning*].

dōn (§ 135), *do, cause, place, promote, remove.*

dorste, dorston, see **durran.**

drēam, m., *joy, mirth* [dream].

drēogan (§ 109), *endure, enjoy, spend* [Scotch dree].

drēorig, *dreary, sad.*

drēorighlēor, adj., *with sad face* [**hlēor** = *cheek, face, leer*].

drēosan (§ 109), *fall, perish* [dross].

drīfan (§ 102), *drive.*

drihten, see **dryhten.**

drincan (§ 110), *drink.*

drohtoð (**-að**), m., *mode of living, occupation* [**drēogan**].

drugon, see **drēogan.**

dryhten (**drihten**), m., *lord, Lord;* dat. sing., **dryhtne.**

dryht-sęle, m., *lordly hall.*

duguð, f., *warrior-band, host, retainers* [*doughtiness*]. In **duguð** and **geogoð**, the higher (older) and lower (younger) ranks are represented, the distinction corresponding roughly to the mediæval distinction between knights and squires.

durran (§ 137), *dare.*

duru, f., *door.*

dyde, see **dōn.**

dynnan (§ 125), *resound* [din].

dȳre (**dīere, dēore, dīore**), *dear, costly.*

E.

ēa, f., *river;* gen. sing., **ēas**; dat. and acc. sing., **ēa.**

ēac, *also, likewise* [a nickname = an eek-name. See § 65, Note 2]; **ēac swilce** (**swelce**) 112, 3 = *also.*

ēaca, m., *addition* [**ēac**]; **tō ēacan** = *in addition to* (§ 94, (4)).

ēage, n., *eye.*

eahta, *eight.*

ēalā, *oh! alas!*

ealað, see **ealu.**

eald (§ 96, (2)), *old.*

ealdor (**aldor**), n., *life;* **gif ðū ðæt ęllenweorc aldre gedīgest** 138, 17 = *if thou survivest that feat with thy life* (instr.).

ealdor-dæg (**aldor-, ealder-**), m., *day of life.*

ealdor-gedāl (aldor-), n., *death* [life-deal].
ealdormǫn, m., *alderman, chief, magistrate.*
ealgian, (§ 130), *protect, defend.*
eall (eal), *all;* **ealne weg**, *all the way* (§ 98, (1)); **ealneg** (<**ealne weg**), *always;* **ealles** (§ 98, (3)), adv., *altogether, entirely.* **Eall (eal)** is frequently used with partitive gen. = *all of:* 143, 19; 145, 3.
ealu (ealo) (§ 68), n., *ale;* gen. sing., **ealað**.
ealu-scerwen, f., *mortal panic* [ale-spilling].
eard, m., *country, home* [**eorðe**].
eardgeard, m., *earth* [earth-yard].
eardian (§ 130), *dwell* [**eard**].
eardstapa, m., *wanderer* [earth-stepper].
ēare, n., *ear.*
earfoð (earfeð), n., *hardship, toil;* gen. pl., **earfeða**.
earfoðlīc, adj., *full of hardship, arduous.*
earm, m., *arm.*
earm, adj., *poor, wretched.*
earmcearig, *wretched, miserable.*
earmlīc, *wretched, miserable.*
earnung, f., *merit* [earning].
ēast, *east.*
ēastan (§ 93, (5)), *from the east.*
Ēast-Dęne (§ 47), *East-Danes.*
ēasteweard, *eastward.*
ēastrihte (**ēastryhte**) (§ 93, (6)), *eastward.*
Ēastron, pl., *Easter.*
ēaðe, *easily.*
ēaðmōdlīce, *humbly.*
eaxl, f., *shoulder* [axle].
Ebrēisc, adj., *Hebrew.*
ēce, *eternal, everlasting.*
ęcg, f., *sword* [edge].
edor, m., *enclosure, dwelling;* nom. pl., **ederas**.
ēdrum, see **ǣdre**.
efne, adv., *just, only* [evenly].
eft, adv., *again, afterwards* [aft].
ęgesa, m., *fear, terror* [awe].
ęllen, n., *strength, courage;* **mid ęlne** = *boldly;* **on ęlne** 147, 17 = *mightily, suddenly,* or *in their* (*earls'*) *strength* (*prime*).
ęllen-mǣrðu, f., *fame for strength, feat of strength.*
ęllenweorc, n., *feat of strength.*
ęllenwōdnis, f., *zeal, fervor.*
ęllor-gāst, m., *inhuman monster* [alien ghost].
ęln, f., *ell* [el-bow].
ęlne, see **ęllen**.
ęlra, adj. comparative, *another* [***ęle** cognate with Lat. alius]; **on ęlran męn** 139, 14 = *in another man.*
emnlǫng (-lang), *equally long;* **on emnlange** = *along* (§ 94, (4)).
ęnde, m., *end.*
ęndebyrdnes, f., *order.*
ęnde-dæg, m., *end-day, day of death.*
ęnde-lāf, f., *last remnant* [end-leaving].
ęngel, m., *angel* [Lat. angelus].
Ęnglafeld (§ 51), m., *Englefield* (in Berkshire).
Ęngle (§ 47), m. pl., *Angles.*
Ęnglisc, adj., *English;* **on Ęnglisc** 117, 18 and 19 = *in English, into English.*
Ęngliscgereord, n., *English language.*

ęnt, m., *giant.*
ēode, see **gān**.
eodorcan (§ 130), *ruminate.*
eorl, m., *earl, warrior, chieftain.*
eorlīc, *earl-like, noble.*
eorð-draca, m., *dragon* [earth-drake].
eorðe, f., *earth.*
eorð-ręced, n., *earth-hall.*
eorðscræf, n., *earth-cave, grave.*
eoten, m., *giant, monster.*
ēow, see **ðū**.
Ēowland, n., *Öland* (an island in the Baltic Sea).
ęrian (§ 125), *plow* [to ear].
Estland, n., *land of the Estas* (on the eastern coast of the Baltic Sea).
Estmęre, m., *Frische Haff.*
Estum, dat. pl., *the Estas.*
etan (§ 115), *eat* [**ort**].
ęttan (§ 127), *graze* [**etan**].
ēðel, m., *territory, native land* [allodial].
ēðel-weard, m., *guardian of his country.*

F.

fæc, n., *interval, space.*
fæder (§ 68, (2)), m., *father.*
fægen, *fain, glad, exultant.*
fæger (**fæġer**), *fair, beautiful.*
fǣlsian (§ 130), *cleanse.*
fǣrlīce, *suddenly* [**fǣr** = *fear*].
fæst, *fast, held fast.*
fæste, adv., *fast, firmly.*
fæstnung, f., *security, safety.*
fæt, n., *vessel* [wine-fat, vat].
fǣtels, m., *vessel;* acc. pl., **fǣtels**.
fæðm, m., *embrace, bosom* [fathom = the space *embraced* by the extended arms].
fāg (**fāh**), *hostile;* **hē wæs fāg wið God** 142, 18 = *he was hostile to God.*
fāh (**fāg**), *variegated, ornamented.*
Falster, *Falster* (island in the Baltic Sea).
fandian (§ 130), *try, investigate* [**findan**].
faran (§ 116), *go* [fare].
feallan (§ 117), *fall, flow.*
fealu, *fallow, pale, dark;* nom. pl. m., **fealwe**.
fēawe (**fēa, fēawa**), pl., *few.*
fela (indeclinable), *much, many* (with gen.).
feld (§ 51), m., *field.*
fell (**fel**), n., *fell, skin, hide.*
fēng, see **fōn**.
fęn-hlið, n., *fen-slope.*
fęn-hop, n., *fen-retreat.*
feoh, n., *cattle, property* [fee]; gen. and dat. sing., **fēos, fēo.**
feohgīfre, *greedy of property, avaricious.*
feohtan (§ 110), *fight.*
fēol, see **feallan**.
fēond (§ 68, (3)), m., *enemy, fiend.*
fēond-grāp, f., *fiend-grip.*
feor (§ 96, (4)), adj., *far, far from* (with dat.).
feor, adv., *far, far back* (time).
feorh, m., n., *life.*
feorh-bęnn, f., *life-wound, mortal wound.*
feorh-lęgu, f., *laying down of life.* (See p. 146, Note on l. 13.)
feorh-sēoc, *life-sick, mortally wounded.*
feorm (**fiorm**), f., *use, benefit* (*food, provisions*) [farm].

feormian (§ 130), *eat, devour.*
feorran, *from afar.*
fēowertig, *forty;* gen., **fēowertiges** (§ 91, Note 1).
ferhð (**ferð**), m., *heart, mind, spirit.*
fęrian (§ 125), *carry, transport* [to ferry]; **fęrede in forðwege** 152, 5 = *carried away.*
fers, n., *verse* [Lat. versus].
fersc, *fresh.*
ferðloca (**ferhð-**), m., *heart, mind, spirit* [heart-locker].
fēt, see **fōt**.
fetor, f., *fetter* [**fōt**]; instr. pl., **feterum**.
feðer, f., *feather;* acc. pl., **feðra**.
fierd, f., *English army* [**faran**].
fīf, *five.*
fīftīene, *fifteen.*
fīftig, *fifty;* gen. sing., **fīftiges** (§ 91, Note 1); dat. pl., **fīftegum** (§ 91, Note 3).
findan (§ 110), *find.*
finger, m., *finger.*
Finnas, m. pl., *Fins.*
fiorm, see **feorm**.
fīras, m. pl., *men* [**feorh**]; gen. pl., **fīra**; dat. pl., **fīrum**.
firrest (**fierrest**), see **feor** (§ 96, (4)).
first, m., *time, period.*
fiscað (**fiscnað**), m., *fishing.*
fiscere, m., *fisherman.*
fiscnað, see **fiscað**.
flēon (§ 118, II.), *flee.*
flēotan (§ 109), *float.*
flęt, n., *floor of the hall.*
flōd, m., *flood, wave.*
folc, n., *folk, people.*
folc-cwēn, f., *folk-queen.*
folc-cyning, m., *folk-king.*
folcgefeoht, n., *folk-fight, battle, general engagement.*
fold-bold, n., *earth-building, hall.*
folde, f., *earth, land, country* [**feld**].
folm, f., *hand* [**fēlan** = *feel*].
fōn (§ 118), *seize, capture, take* [fang]; **tō rīce fōn** = *come to (ascend) the throne.*
for (§ 94, (1)), *for, on account of;* **for ðæm** (**ðe**), **for ðon** (**ðe**), *because;* **for ðon, for ðȳ, for ðæm** (**for-ðām**), *therefore.*
fōr, see **faran**.
forbærnan (§ 127), *burn thoroughly* [**for** is intensive, like Lat. per].
forgiefan (**-gifan**) (§ 115), *give, grant.*
forhęrgian (§ 130), *harry, lay waste.*
forhogdnis, f., *contempt.*
forht, *fearful, afraid.*
forhwæga, *about, at least.*
forlætan (§ 117), *abandon, leave.*
forlēt, forlēton, see **forlætan**.
forma, *first;* **forman sīðe**, *the first time* (instr.).
forniman (§ 114), *take off, destroy.*
forspęndan (§ 127), *spend, squander.*
forstǫndan (**-standan**) (§ 116), *understand.*
forswāpan (§ 117), *sweep away;* pret. 3d sing. indic., **forswēop**.
forswęrian (§ 116), *forswear* (with dat.); past part., **forsworen**.
forð, *forth, forward.*
forðolian (§ 130), *miss, go without* (with dat.) [not to *thole* or experience].

forðweg, m., *way forth;* **in forðwege**, *away*.
fōt (§ 68, (1)), m., *foot*.
Frǣna, m., *Frene*.
frætwe, f. pl., *fretted armor, jewels* [fret].
fram, see **frǫm**.
frēa, m., *lord, Lord*.
frēa-drihten, m., *lord, master*.
frēfran (§ 130), *console, cheer* [**frōfor**].
frǫmde, *strange, foreign;* **ðā frǫmdan**, *the strangers*.
frǫmman (§ 125), *accomplish, perform, support* [to frame].
frǫmsumnes (**-nis**), f., *kindness, benefit*.
frēo (**frīo**), *free;* gen. pl., **frēora** (**frīora**).
frēodōm, m., *freedom*.
frēolīc, *noble* [free-like].
frēomǣg, m., *free kinsman*.
frēond (§ 68, (3)), m., *friend*.
frēondlēas, *friendless*.
frēondlīce, *in a friendly manner*.
frēorig, *cold, chill* [**frēoran**].
frīora, see **frēo**.
frið, m., n., *peace, security* [bel-*fry*].
frōd, *old, sage, prudent*.
frōfor, f., *comfort, consolation, alleviation;* **fyrena frōfre** 137, 7 = *as an alleviation of outrages* (dat.).
frǫm (**fram**) (§ 94, (1)), *from, by*.
frǫm, adv., *away, forth*.
fruma, m., *origin, beginning* [**frǫm**].
frumsceaft, f., *creation*.
fugela, see **fugol**.
fugelere, m., *fowler*.
fugol (**fugel**), m., *fowl, bird;* gen. pl., **fugela**.
ful, n., *cup, beaker*.
fūl, *foul*.
fūlian (§ 130), *grow foul, decompose*.
full (**ful**), adj., *full* (with gen.); **be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.
full (**ful**) adv., *fully, very*.
fultum, m., *help*.
furðor (**furður**), adv., *further*.
furðum, adv., *even*.
fylð, see **feallan**.
fyren (**firen**), f., *crime, violence, outrage*.
fyrhtu, f., *fright, terror;* dat. sing., **fyrhtu**.
fyrst, adj., superlative, *first, chief*.
fȳsan (§ 126), *make ready, prepare* [**fūs** = *ready*]; **gūðe gefȳsed** 137, 9 = *ready for battle*.

G.

gād, n., *lack*.
gǣst, see **gāst**.
gafol, n., *tax, tribute*.
galan (§ 116), *sing* [nightingale].
gālnes, f., *lust, impurity*.
gān (§ 134), *go*.
gār, m., *spear* [gore, gar-fish].
gār-wiga, m., *spear-warrior*.
gāst (**gǣst**), m., *spirit, ghost*.
gāstlīc (**gǣstlīc**), *ghastly, terrible*.
ge, *and;* see **ǣgðer**.
gē, *ye;* see **ðū**.
geador, *together*.
geǣmetigian (§ 130), *disengage from* (with acc. of person and gen. of thing) [empty].
geærnan (§ 127), *gain by running* [**iernan**].
gēap, *spacious*.

gēar, n., *year;* gen. pl., **gēara**, is used adverbially = *of yore, formerly.*

gēardæg, m., *day of yore.*

geare (**gearo**, **gearwe**), *readily, well, clearly* [yarely].

Gēat, m., *a Geat, the Geat* (i.e. Beowulf).

Gēatas, m. pl., *the Geats* (a people of South Sweden).

Gēat-mecgas, m. pl., *Geat men* (= the fourteen who accompanied Beowulf to Heorot).

gebēorscipe, m., *banquet, entertainment.*

gebētan (§ 126), *make amends for* [**bōt**].

gebīdan (§ 102), *wait, bide one's time* (intrans.); *endure, experience* (trans., with acc.).

gebind, n., *commingling.*

gebindan (§ 110), *bind.*

gebrēowan (§ 109), *brew.*

gebrowen, see **gebrēowan**.

gebūd, **gebūn**, see **būan** (§ 126, Note 2).

gebyrd, n., *rank, social distinction.*

gecēosan (§ 109), *choose, decide.*

gecnāwan (§ 117), *know, understand.*

gecoren, see **gecēosan**.

gecringan (§ 110), *fall, die* [cringe].

gedǣlan (§ 126), *deal out, give;* **dēaðe gedǣlde** 152, 7 = *apportioned to death* (dat.), or, *tore* (?) *in death* (instr.).

gedafenian (§ 130), *become, befit, suit* (impersonal, usually with dat., but with acc. 112, 10).

gedīgan (§ 126), *endure, survive.*

gedōn (§ 135), *do, cause, effect.*

gedræg, n., *company.*

gedrēosan (§ 109), *fall, fail.*

gedriht (**gedryht**), n., *band, troop.*

gedrogen, see **drēogan**.

gedrync, n., *drinking.*

geęndian (§ 130), *end, finish.*

gefaran (§ 116), *go, die.*

gefēa, m., *joy.*

gefeaht, see **gefeohtan**.

gefeh, see **gefēon**.

gefēng, see **gefōn**.

gefeoht, n., *fight, battle.*

gefeohtan (§ 110), *fight.*

gefēon (§ 118, v.), *rejoice at* (with dat.); pret. 3d sing., **gefeah**, **gefeh**.

gefēra, m., *companion, comrade* [co-farer].

gefliēman (§ 126), *put to flight* [**flēon**].

gefohten, see **gefeohtan**.

gefōn (§ 118, vii.), *seize.*

gefōr, see **gefaran**.

gefrǣge, n., *hearsay, report;* **mīne gefrǣge** (instr.) 141, 7 = *as I have heard say, according to my information.*

gefręmman (§ 125), *perform, accomplish, effect.*

gefultumian (§ 130), *help* [**fultum**].

gefylce, n., *troop, division* [**folc**]; dat. pl., **gefylcum**, **gefylcium**.

gefyllan (§ 127), *fill* (with gen.); past part. pl., f., **gefylda**.

geglęngan (§ 127), *adorn.*

gehātland, n., *promised land* [**gehātan** = *to promise*].

gehealdan (§ 117), *hold, maintain.*

gehīeran (gehȳran) (§ 126), *hear.*

gehīersumnes, f., *obedience.*

gehola, m., *protector* [**helan**].

gehwā (§ 77, Note), *each;* **on healfa gehwone** 142, 7 (see Note 140, 15. Observe that the pron. may, as here, be masc. and the gen. fem.).

gehwæðer (§ 77, Note), *each, either, both.*

gehwylc (gehwilc) (§ 77, Note), *each* (with gen. pl. See Note 140, 15).

gehwyrfan (§ 127), *convert, change.*

gehȳdan (§ 126), *hide, conceal, consign.*

gehygd, f., n., *thought, purpose.*

gehȳran, see **gehīeran**.

gehȳrnes, f., *hearing;* **eal ðā hē in gehȳrnesse geleornian meahte** 115, 14 = *all things that he could learn by hearing.*

gelædan (§ 126), *lead.*

gelæred, part.-adj., *learned;* superlative, **gelæredest**.

gelafian (§ 130), *lave.*

gelęnge, *along of, belonging to* (with dat.).

geleornian (-liornian) (§ 130), *learn.*

gelīce, *likewise; in like manner to* (with dat.).

gelīefan (gelȳfan) (§ 126), *believe;* **ðæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelȳfde** 137, 6 = *that she believed in any earl.*

gelimpan (§ 110), *happen, be fulfilled.*

gelimplīc, *proper, fitting.*

gelȳfan, see **gelīefan**.

gelȳfed, *weak, infirm* [left (hand)].

gēmde, see **gīeman**.

gemet, n., *meter, measure, ability.*

gemētan (§ 126), *meet.*

gemǫn, see **gemunan**.

gemunan (§ 136), *remember;* indic. pres. 1st and 3d sing., **gemǫn**; pret. sing., **gemunde**.

gemynd, n., *memory, memorial;* **tō gemyndum** 147, 5 = *as a memorial.*

gemyndgian (-mynian) (§ 130), *remember;* **mid hine gemyndgade** 115, 15 = *he treasured in his memory;* **gemyne mærðo** 138, 15 = *be mindful of glory* (imperative 2d sing.).

gemyndig, *mindful of* (with gen.).

genāp, see **genīpan**.

geneahhe, *enough, often;* **genehost**, superlative, *very often.*

genip, n., *mist, darkness.*

genīpan (§ 102), *grow dark.*

genīwian (§ 130), *renew.*

genōh, *enough.*

genumen, see **niman**.

geoc, n., *yoke.*

gēocor, *dire, sad.*

geogoð, f., *youth, young people, young warriors.* (See **duguð**.)

geond (giond) (§ 94, (2)), *throughout* [yond].

geondhweorfan (§ 110), *pass over, traverse, recall;* **ðonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð** 150, 15 = *then his mind recalls the memory of kinsmen.*

geondscēawian (§ 130), *survey, review;* **georne geondscēawað** 150, 16 = *eagerly surveys them.*

geondðęnc(e)an (§ 128), *think over, consider.*

geong (§ 96, (2)), *young;* **giengest**, (**gingest**), superlative, *youngest, latest, last.*

geong = **gǫng**, see **gǫngan** (imperative 2d sing.).

gēong (**gīong**), see **gǫngan** (pret. 3d sing.).

georn (**giorn**), *eager, desirous, zealous, sure* [yearn].

georne, *eagerly, certainly;* **wiste ðē georne** 143, 5 = *knew the more certainly.*

geornfulnes, f., *eagerness, zeal.*

geornlīce, *eagerly, attentively.*

geornor, see **georne**.

geręcednes, f., *narration* [**ręccan**].

gerisenlīc, *suitable, becoming.*

gerȳman (§ 126), *extend*, (trans.) [**rūm**].

gesǣliglīc, *happy, blessed* [silly].

gesamnode, see **gesǫmnian**.

gesceaft, f., *creature, creation, destiny* [**scieppan**].

gesceap, n., *shape, creation, destiny* [**scieppan**].

gescieldan (§ 127), *shield, defend.*

gesealde, see **gesęllan**.

geseglian (§ 130), *sail.*

geselda, m., *comrade.*

gesęllan (§ 128), *give.*

gesēon (**gesīon**) (§ 118), *see, observe;* pres. indic. 3d sing., **gesihð**.

geset, n., *habitation, seat.*

gesęttan (§ 127), *set, place, establish.*

gesewen, see **sēon**, **gesēon** (past part.).

gesewenlīc, *seen, visible* [seenlike].

gesiglan (§ 127), *sail.*

gesihð, see **gesēon**.

gesittan (§ 115, Note 2), *sit* (trans., as *to sit a horse, to sit a boat*, etc.); *sit, sit down* (intrans.).

geslægen, see **slēan** (§ 118).

gesǫmnian (§ 130), *assemble, collect.*

gesǫmnung, f., *collection, assembly.*

gestāh, see **gestīgan**.

gestaðelian (§ 130), *establish, restore* [**standan**].

gesteal, n., *establishment, foundation* [stall].

gestīgan (§ 102), *ascend, go* [stile, stirrup, sty (= a *rising* on the eye)].

gestrangian (§ 130), *strengthen.*

gestrēon, n., *property.*

gestrȳnan (§ 126), *obtain, acquire* [**gestrēon**].

gesweorcan (§ 110), *grow dark, become sad;* **For ðon ic geðęncan ne mæg geond ðās woruld for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce** 151, 3–4 = *Therefore in this world I may not understand wherefore my mind does not grow "black as night."* (Brooke.)

geswīcan (§ 102), *cease, cease from* (with gen.).

getæl, n., *something told, narrative.*

getruma, m., *troop, division.*

geðanc, m., n., *thought.*

geðeah, see **geðicgan**.

geðęnc(e)an (§ 128), *think, remember, understand, consider.*

geðēodan (§ 126), *join.*
geðēode (-**ðīode**), n., *language, tribe.*
geðēodnis, f., *association;* but in 112, 2 this word is used to render the Lat. *appetitus = desire.*
geðicg(e)an (§ 115, Note 2), *take, receive;* pret. indic. 2d sing., **geðeah.**
geðungen, part.-adj., *distinguished, excellent* [**ðēon**, *to thrive*].
geðyldig, *patient* [**ðolian**].
geweald (**gewald**), n., *control, possession, power* [wield].
geweorc, n., *work, labor.*
geweorðian (§ 130), *honor* [to attribute *worth* to].
gewīcian (§ 130), *dwell.*
gewin(n), n., *strife, struggle.*
gewindan (§ 110), *flee* [wend].
gewissian (§ 130), *guide, direct.*
gewītan (§ 102), *go, depart.*
geworht, see **gewyrcan.**
gewrit, n., *writing, Scripture.*
gewunian (§ 130), *be accustomed, be wont.*
gewyrc(e)an (§ 128), *work, create, make, produce.*
gid(d), n., *word, speech.*
giefan (§ 115), *give.*
giefstōl, m., *gift-stool, throne.*
giefu (**gifu**), f., *gift.*
gielp (**gilp**), m., n., *boast* [yelp].
gīeman (**gēman**) (§ 126), *endeavor, strive.*
gīet (**gīt**, **gȳt**), *yet, still.*
gif (**gyf**), *if* [not related to *give*].
gifeðe (**gyfeðe**), *given, granted.*
gilp, see **gielp.**
gilp-cwide, m., *boasting speech* [*yelp*-speech].
gingest, see **geong** (adj.).
giohðo (**gehðu**), f., *care, sorrow, grief.*
giū (**iū**), *formerly, of old.*
glæd (**glǣd**), *glad.*
glēaw, *wise, prudent.*
glīwstæf, m., *glee, joy;* instr. pl. (used adverbially), **glīwstafum** 150, 16 = *joyfully.*
God, m., *God.*
gōd (§ 96, (3)), *good;* **mid his gōdum** 115, 12 = *with his possessions (goods).*
godcund, *divine* [**God**].
godcundlīce, *divinely.*
gold, n., *gold.*
gold-ǣht, f., *gold treasure.*
gold-fāh, *gold-adorned.*
gold-hroden, part.-adj., *gold-adorned.*
goldwine, m., *prince, giver of gold, lord* [gold-friend].
gomel (**gomol**), *old, old man.*
gǫngan (**gangan**) (§ 117), *go* [gang]; imperative 2d sing., **geong**; pret. sing., **gēong**, **gīong**, **gēng**; past part., **gegǫngen**, **gegangen.** The most commonly used pret. is **ēode**, which belongs to **gān** (§ 134).
Gotland, n., *Jutland* (in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*), *Gothland* (in *Wulfstan's Voyage*).
gram, *grim, angry, fierce, the angry one.*
grāp, f., *grasp, clutch, claw.*
grētan (§ 126), *greet, attack, touch.*
grōwan (§ 117, (2)), *grow.*
gryre-lēoð, n., *terrible song* [grisly lay].
guma, m., *man, hero* [groom; see § 65, Note 1].

gūð, f., *war, battle.*
gūð-bill, n., *sword* [war-bill].
gūð-gewǣde, n., *armor* [war-weeds].
gūð-hrēð, f., *war-fame.*
gūð-wine, m., *sword* [war-friend].
gyddian (§ 130), *speak formally, chant* [giddy ; the original meaning of *giddy* was *mirthful*, as when one sings].
gyf, see **gif**.
gyfeðe, see **gifeðe**.
gyldan (**gieldan**) (§ 110), *pay ;* indic. 3d sing., **gylt**.
gylden, *golden* [**gold**].

H.

habban (§ 133), *have.*
hād, m., *order, rank, office, degree* [-hood, -head].
hæfta, m., *captive.*
hægel (**hagol**), m., *hail ;* instr. sing., **hagle**.
hæglfaru, f., *hail-storm* [hail-faring].
hæle, see **hæleð**.
hǣl, f., *hail, health, good luck.*
hæleð (**hæle**), m., *hero, warrior.*
hǣt, see **hātan**.
hǣðen, *heathen.*
Hǣðum (**æt Hǣðum**), *Haddeby* (= *Schleswig*).
hāl, *hale, whole.*
hālettan (§ 127), *greet, salute* [to hail].
Halfdęne, *Halfdane* (proper name).
hālga, m., *saint.*
Hālgoland, *Halgoland* (in ancient Norway).
hālig, *holy.*
hālignes, f., *holiness.*
hām, m., *home ;* dat. sing., **hāme**, **hām** (p. 104, Note) ; used adverbially in **hām ēode** 112, 18 = *went home.*
hand, see **hǫnd**.
hār, *hoary, gray.*
hāt, *hot.*
hātan (§ 117, Note 2), *call, name, command ;* pret. sing., **heht**, **hēt**.
hātheort, *hot-hearted.*
hātte, see **hātan**.
hē, **hēo**, **hit** (§ 53), *he, she, it.*
hēafod, n., *head.*
hēah (§ 96, (2)). *high ;* acc. sing. m., **hēanne**.
hēah-sęle, m., *high hall.*
hēahðungen, *highly prosperous, aristocratic* [**hēah** + past part. of **ðēon** (§ 118)].
healdan (§ 117), *hold, govern, possess ;* 144, 9 = *hold up, sustain.*
healf, adj., *half.*
healf, f., *half, side, shore.*
heall, f., *hall.*
heals, m., *neck.*
hēan, *abject, miserable.*
hēanne, see **hēah**.
heard, *hard.*
heard-hicgende, *brave-minded* [hard-thinking].
hearm-scaða, m., *harmful foe* [harm-scather].
hearpe, f., *harp.*
heaðo-dēor, *battle-brave.*
heaðo-mǣre, *famous in battle.*
heaðo-wylm, m., *flame-surge, surging of fire* [battle-welling].
hēawan (§ 117), *hew, cut.*
hębban, **hōf**, **hōfon**, **gehafen** (§ 117), *heave, lift, raise.*

hęfig, *heavy, oppressive.*
heht, see **hātan.**
helan (§ 114), *conceal.*
hęll, f., *hell.*
helm, m., *helmet.*
Helmingas, m. pl., *Helmings* (Wealtheow, Hrothgar's queen, is a Helming).
help, f., *help.*
helpan (§ 110), *help* (with dat.).
heofon, m., *heaven.*
heofonlīc, *heavenly.*
heofonrīce, n., *kingdom of heaven.*
hēold, see **healdan.**
heolstor (**-ster**), n., *darkness, concealment, cover* [holster].
heora (**hiera**), see **hē.**
heord, f., *care, guardianship* [hoard].
heoro-drēorig, *bloody* [sword-dreary].
Heorot, *Heorot, Hart* (the famous hall which Hrothgar built).
heorte, f., *heart.*
hēr, *here, hither;* in the *Chronicle* the meaning frequently is *at this date, in this year:* 99, 1.
hęre, m., *Danish army.*
hęrenis, f., *praise.*
hęrgian (§ 130), *raid, harry, ravage* [**hęre**].
hęrgung, f., *harrying, plundering.*
hęrian (**hęrigean**) (§ 125), *praise.*
hērsumedon, see **hīersumian.**
hēt, see **hātan.**
hider (**hieder**), *hither.*
hiera, see **hē.**
hīeran (**hȳran**) (§ 126), *hear, belong.*
hierde, m., *shepherd, instigator* [keeper of a *herd*].
hierdebōc, f., *pastoral treatise* [shepherd-book, a translation of Lat. *Cura Pastoralis*].
hīerra, see **hēah.**
hīersumian (**hȳr-**, **hēr-**) (§ 130), *obey* (with dat.).
hige (**hyge**), m., *mind, heart.*
hige-ðihtig, *bold-hearted.*
hild, f., *battle.*
hilde-dēor, *battle-brave.*
hilde-mecg, m., *warrior.*
hilde-sæd, *battle-sated.*
hin-fūs, *eager to be gone* [hence-ready].
hira, see **hē.**
hlǣw (**hlāw**), m., *mound, burial mound* [Lud*low* and other place-names, *low* meaning *hill*].
hlāford, m., *lord, master* [loaf-ward ?].
hleahtor, m., *laughter.*
hlēo, m., *refuge, protector* [lee].
hlīfian (§ 130), *rise, tower.*
hlyn, m., *din, noise.*
hlynsian (§ 130), *resound.*
hof, n., *court, abode.*
hogode, see **hycgan.**
holm, m., *sea, ocean.*
hǫnd (**hand**), f., *hand;* **on gehwæðre hǫnd**, *on both sides.*
hord, m., n., *hoard, treasure.*
hordcofa, m., *breast, heart* [hoard-chamber].
hors, n., *horse.*
horshwæl, m., *walrus.*
hrædwyrde, *hasty of speech* [**hræd** = *quick*].
hrægel, n., *garment;* dat. sing., **hrægle.**
hrān, m., *reindeer.*
hraðe, *quickly, soon* [*rath*-er].
hrēo (**hrēoh**), *rough, cruel, sad.*
hrēosan (§ 109), *fall.*

hrēran (§ 126), *stir.*
hreðer, m., n., *breast, purpose;* dat. sing., **hreðre.**
hrīm, m., *rime, hoarfrost.*
hrīmceald, *rime-cold.*
hring, m., *ring, ring-mail.*
hrīð, f. (?), *snow-storm.*
hrōf, m., *roof.*
Hrones næss, literally *Whale's Ness, whale's promontory;* see **næss.**
hrūse, f., *earth* [**hrēosan**: deposit].
hryre, m., *fall, death* [**hrēosan**].
hrȳðer, n., *cattle* [rinder-pest].
hryðig, *ruined* (?), *storm-beaten;* nom. pl. m., **hryðge.**
hū, *how.*
Humbre, f., *river Humber.*
hund, *hundred.*
hunig, n., *honey.*
hunta, m., *hunter.*
huntoð (-**tað**), m., *hunting.*
hūru, adv., *about.*
hūs, n., *house.*
hwā, hwæt (§ 74), *who? what?* **swā hwæt swā** (§ 77, Note), *whatsoever;* indefinite, *any one, anything;* **for hwan** (instr.), *wherefore.*
hwæl, m., *whale.*
hwælhunta, m., *whale-hunter.*
hwælhuntað, m., *whale-fishing.*
hwǣr, *where?* **hwǣr . . . swā**, *wheresoever;* **wel hwǣr**, *nearly everywhere.*
hwæthwugu, *something.*
hwæðer, *whether, which of two?*
hwæðre, *however, nevertheless.*
hwēne, see **hwōn.**
hweorfan (§ 110), *turn, go.*
hwider, *whither.*
hwīl, f., *while, time;* **ealle ðā hwīle ðe**, *all the while that;* **hwīlum** (instr. pl.), *sometimes.*
hwilc (**hwylc, hwelc**) (§ 74, Note 1), *which? what?*
hwōn, n., *a trifle;* **hwēne** (instr. sing.), *somewhat, a little.*
hwǫnan, *when.*
hȳ, see **hīe.**
hycgan (§ 132), *think, resolve;* pret. 3d sing., **hogode.**
hȳd, f., *hide, skin.*
hyge, see **hige.**
hyra (**hiera**), see **hē.**
hȳran, see **hīeran.**
hyrde, see **hierde.**
hys (**his**), see **hē.**
hyt (**hit**), see **hē.**

I.

ic (§ 72), *I.*
īdel, *idle, useless, desolate.*
ides, f., *woman, lady.*
ieldra, adj., see **eald.**
ieldra, m., *an elder, parent, ancestor.*
iernan (**yrnan**) (§ 112), *run.*
īglǫnd (**īgland**), n., *island.*
ilca (**ylca**), *the same* [of that ilk].
Ilfing, *the Elbing.*
in, *in, into* (with dat. and acc.); **in on**, *in on, to, toward.*
inbryrdnis (-**nes**), f., *inspiration, ardor.*
indryhten, *very noble.*
ingǫng, m., *entrance.*
innan, adv., *within, inside;* **on innan**, *within.*
innanbordes, adv.-gen., *within borders, at home.*
inne, adv., *within, inside.*
intinga, m., *cause, sake.*

inweardlīce, *inwardly, fervently.*
inwid-sorg (**inwit-sorh**), f., *sorrow caused by an enemy.*
inwit-ðanc, m., *hostile intent.*
Īraland, n., *Ireland* (but in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*, *Iceland* is probably meant).
īren, n., *iron, sword;* gen. pl., **īrenna**, **īrena**.
īren-bęnd, m., f., *iron-band.*
īu, see **gīu**.

K.

kynerīce, see **cynerīce**.
kyning, see **cyning**.
kyrtel, m., *kirtle, coat.*

L.

Lǣden, *Latin.*
Lǣdengeðēode (**-ðīode**), n., *Latin language.*
Lǣdenware (§ 47), m. pl., *Latin people, Romans.*
lǣfan (§ 126), *leave.*
lǣge, see **licgan**.
Lǣland, n., *Laaland* (in Denmark).
lǣn, n., *loan;* **tō lǣne** 121, 2 = *as a loan.*
lǣne, adj., *as a loan, transitory, perishable.*
lǣran (§ 126), *teach, advise, exhort* [**lār**].
lǣssa, **lǣsta**, see **lȳtel**.
lǣstan (§ 127), *last, hold out* (intrans.); *perform, achieve* (trans.).
lǣtan (§ 117), *let, leave.*
lāf, f., *something left, remnant, heirloom* (often a *sword*); **tō lāfe**, *as a remnant, remaining.*
lagulād, f., *sea* [lake-way, **lād** = *leading, direction, way*).
land, see **lǫnd**.
lang, see **lǫng**.
Langaland, n., *Langeland* (in Denmark).
lār, f., *lore, teaching.*
lārcwide, m., *precept, instruction*, [**cwide** < **cweðan**].
lārēow, m., *teacher* [**lār** + **ðēow**].
lāst, m., *track, footprint* [shoemaker's last]; **on lāst(e)**, *in the track of, behind* (with dat.).
lāð, *loathsome, hateful.*
lēas, *loose, free from, bereft of* (with gen.).
lēasung, f., *leasing, deception, falsehood.*
lęcgan (§ 125, Note), *lay.*
lēfdon, see **līefan**.
leger, n., *lying in, illness* [**licgan**].
lęng, see **lǫnge**.
lęngra, see **lǫng**.
lēod, m., *prince, chief.*
lēod, f., *people, nation* (the plural has the same meaning).
lēod-scipe, m., *nation* [peopleship].
lēof, *dear* [lief].
leoht, adj., *light.*
lēoht, n., *light, brightness.*
leornere, m., *learner, disciple.*
leornian (§ 130), *learn.*
leornung (**liornung**), f., *learning.*
lēoð, n., *song* [lay ?].
lēoðcræft, m., *poetic skill* [laycraft].
lēoðsǫng, n., *song, poem.*
lēt, see **lǣtan**.
libban (§ 133), *live;* pres. part., **lifigende**, *living, alive.*

līc, n., *body, corpse* [lich-gate, Lichfield].
licgan (§ 115, Note 2), *lie, extend, flow, lie dead;* 3d sing. indic. pres., **ligeð, līð.**
līchama (**-hǫma**), m., *body* [body-covering].
līcian (§ 130), *please* (with dat.) [like].
līc-sār, n., *body-sore, wound in the body.*
līefan (**lēfan**) (§ 126), *permit, allow* (with dat.) [grant *leave* to].
līf, n., *life.*
līf-dagas, m. pl., *life-days.*
lifigende, see **libban.**
līg, m., *flame, fire.*
ligeð, see **licgan.**
lim, n., *limb.*
list, f., *cunning;* dat. pl., **listum**, is used adverbially = *cunningly.*
līð, see **licgan.**
lof, m., *praise, glory.*
lǫnd (**land**), n., *land, country.*
lǫng (**lang**) (§ 96, (2)), *long.*
lǫnge (**lange**) (§ 97, (2)), *long;* **lǫnge on dæg**, *late in the day.*
lufan, see **lufu.**
lufian (**lufigean**) (§ 131), *love.*
luflīce, *lovingly.*
lufu, f., *love;* dat. sing. (weak), **lufan.**
lungre, *quickly.*
lust, m., *joy* [lust]; **on lust**, *joyfully.*
lȳt, indeclinable, *little, few* (with partitive gen.).
lȳtel (**lītel**) (§ 96, (2)), *little, small.*

M.

mā, see **micle** (§ 97, (2)).
mæg, see **magan.**
mǣg, m., *kinsman;* nom. pl., **māgas** (§ 27, (2)).
mægen, n., *strength, power* [might and *main*].
mægen-ellen, n., *main strength, mighty courage.*
mǣgð, f., *tribe.*
mægðhād, m., *maidenhood, virginity.*
mǣl gesceaft, f., *appointed time* [**mǣl** = *meal, time*].
mǣran (§ 126), *make famous, honor.*
mǣre, *famous, glorious, notorious.*
mǣrðo (**mǣrðo, mǣrð**), f., *glory, fame.*
mæsseprēost, m., *mass-priest.*
mǣst, see **micel.**
magan (§ 137), *be able, may.*
māgas, see **mǣg.**
magu (**mago**), m., *son, man.*
maguðegn, m., *vassal, retainer.*
man(**n**), see **mǫn**(**n**).
mancus, m., *mancus, half-crown;* gen. pl., **mancessa.**
māndæd, f., *evil deed.*
manig, see **mǫnig.**
manigfeald, see **mǫnigfeald.**
māra, see **micel.**
maðelian (§ 130), *harangue, speak.*
māðum (**māððum**), m., *gift, treasure, jewel;* gen. pl., **māðma.**
māððumgyfa, m., *treasure-giver, lord.*
māððum-wela, m., *wealth of treasure.*
mē, see **ic.**
meaht, f., *might, power.*
meahte, see **magan.**

mearc, f., *boundary, limit* [mark, march].
mearg (**mearh**), m., *horse;* nom. pl., **mēaras.**
mearð, m., *marten.*
mec, see **ic.**
medmicel, *moderately large, short, brief.*
medu (**medo**), m., *mead.*
medu-bęnc, f., *mead-bench.*
medu-ful, n., *mead-cup.*
medu-heall, f., *mead-hall.*
męn, see **mǫn(n).**
męngan (§ 127), *mingle, mix.*
męnigu (**męnigeo**), f., *multitude* [many].
męnniscnes, f., *humanity, incarnation* [man].
meolc, f., *milk.*
Mēore, *Möre* (in Sweden).
męre, m., *lake, mere, sea* [mermaid].
Meretūn, m., *Merton* (in Surrey).
mētan (§ 126), *meet, find.*
Metod (**Meotod**, **Metud**), m., *Creator, God.*
metod-sceaft, f., *appointed doom, eternity.*
micel (§ 96, (3)), *great, mighty, strong, large* [mickle]; **māra**, *more, stronger, larger.*
micle (**micele**), *greatly, much.*
miclum, (§ 93, (4)), *greatly.*
mid, *with, amid, among* (with dat. and acc.).
middangeard, m., *earth, world* [middle-yard].
middeweard, *midward, toward the middle.*
Mierce, m. pl., *Mercians.*
mihte, see **magan.**
mīl, f., *mile* [Lat. mille].
mildheortnes, f., *mild-heartedness, mercy.*
milts, f., *mildness, mercy.*
mīn (§ 76), *my, mine.*
mislīc, *various.*
missenlīc, *various.*
mōd, n., *mood, mind, courage.*
mōdcearig, *sorrowful of mind.*
mōdega, **mōdga**, see **mōdig.**
mōdgeðanc, m., *purpose of mind.*
mōdig, *moody, brave, proud.*
mōdor, f., *mother.*
mōdsefa, m., *mind, heart.*
mǫn(n) (**man**, **mann**) (§ 68; § 70, Note), m., *man, one, person, they.*
mōna, m., *moon.*
mōnað (§ 68, (1), Note), m., *month* [**mōna**]; dat. sing., **mōnðe.**
mǫn(n)cynn, n., *mankind.*
mǫndryhten, m., *liege lord.*
mǫnian (**manian**) (§ 130), *admonish.*
mǫnig (**manig**, **mǫneg**, **mænig**), *many.*
mǫnigfeald (**manig-**), *manifold, various.*
mōnðe, see **mōnað.**
mōr, m., *moor.*
morgen, m., *morning;* dat. sing., **morgen(n)e.**
morðor-bealu (**-bealo**), n., *murder* [murder-bale]; see **ðurfan.**
mōste, see **mōtan.**
mōtan (§ 137), *may, be permitted, must.*
mund-gripe, m., *hand-grip.*
munuc, m., *monk* [Lat. monachus].
munuchād, m., *monkhood, monastic rank.*

mūð, m., *mouth.*
myntan (§ 127), *be minded, intend;* pret. indic. 3d sing., **mynte.**
mynster, n., *monastery* [Lat. monasterium]; dat. sing., **mynstre.**
mȳre, f., *mare* [**mearh**].
myrð, f., *joy, mirth;* **mōdes myrðe** 142, 17 = *with joy of heart.*

N.

nā (**nō**), *not* [**ne ā** = *n-ever*]; **nā ne**, *not, not at all.*
nabban (p. 32, Note), *not to have.*
nǣdre, f., *serpent, adder.*
nǣfde, see **nabban.**
nǣfre, *never.*
nǣnig (§ 77), *no one, no, none.*
nǣre, nǣren, nǣron, see § 40, Note 2.
næs = **ne wæs**, see § 40, Note 2.
næss, m., *ness, headland.*
nāht, see **nōht.**
nālæs (**nāles**), *not at all* [**nā ealles**].
nam, see **niman.**
nama, see **nǫma.**
nāmon, see **niman.**
nān, *not one, no, none* [**ne ān**].
nānwuht, n., *nothing* [no whit].
ne, *not.*
nē, *nor;* **nē . . . nē**, *neither . . . nor.*
nēah (§ 96, (4)), *near.*
nēah, adv., *nigh, near, nearly, almost;* comparative, **nēar**, *nearer.*
neaht, see **niht.**
nēalēcan (-lǣcan) (§ 126), *draw near to, approach* (with dat.).
nēar, see **nēah**, adv.
nēat, n., *neat, cattle.*
nęmnan (§ 127), *name.*
nemðe, (**nymðe**), *except, unless.*
nęrian (§ 125), *save, preserve.*
nēten, see **nīeten.**
nīedbeðearf, *needful, necessary.*
nīehst, see **nēah** (§ 96, (4)).
nīeten (**nēten**), n., *neat, beast, cattle.*
nigontīene, *nineteen.*
niht (**neaht**) (§ 68, (1), Note), *night.*
nihthelm, m., *night-helm, shade of night.*
nihtscūa, m., *shadow of night.*
niht-weorc, n., *night-work.*
niman (§ 114), *take, gain* [nimble, numb].
nīpan (§ 102), *grow dark, darken.*
nis, see § 40, Note 2.
nīð, m., *malice, violence.*
nīwe, *new, novel, startling.*
nō, see **nā.**
nōht (**nāht, nā-wiht**), n., *not a whit, naught, nothing; not, not at all.*
nōhwæðer (**nāhwæðer**), *neither;* **nōhwæðer nē . . ne . . . nē . . ne** 118, 8 = *neither . . . nor.*
nolde, noldon = **ne wolde, ne woldon**, see **willan.**
nǫma (**nama**), m., *name.*
norð (§ 97, (1)), *north, in the north, northwards.*
norðan (§ 93, (5)), *from the north;* **be norðan**, see § 94, (4).
Norð-Dęne, m. pl., *North-Danes.*
norðeweard, *northward.*
Norðhymbre, m. pl., *Northumbrians.*
Norðmanna, see **Norðmǫn.**

Norðmęn, see **Norðmǫn**.
norðmest, see **norð**.
Norðmǫn (-man) (§ 68, (1)), *Norwegian*.
norðor, see **norð**.
norðryhte, *northward*.
norðweard, *northward*.
Norðweg, *Norway*.
nose, f., *cape*, *naze* [ness, nose].
notu, f., *office*, *employment*.
nū, *now; now that*, *seeing that;* **nū ðā** 138, 13 = *now then*.
nȳhst (**nīehst**), see **nēah**.
nymðe, see **nemðe**.
nysse, see **nytan**.
nyste, see **nytan**.
nyt(t), *useful*, *profitable*.
nytan (**nitan**<**ne witan**, § 136), *not to know;* 3d sing. pret., **nysse**, **nyste**.

O.

of (§ 94, (1)), *of*, *from*, *concerning*.
ofer (§ 94, (2)), *over*, *across*, *after*, *in spite of* (see 144, 14); **ofer eorðan** 142, 9 = *on earth*.
ofer, adv., *over*, *across*.
oferfēran (§ 126), *go over*, *traverse*.
oferfrēosan (§ 109), *freeze over*.
oferfroren, see **oferfrēosan**.
ofgiefan (§ 115), *give up*, *relinquish*.
ofost, f., *haste*.
ofslægen, see **ofslēan**.
ofslēan (§ 118), *slay off*, *slay*.
ofslōge, see **ofslēan**.
oft, *oft*, *often;* superlative, **oftost**.
on (§ 94, (3)), *in*, *into*, *on*, *against*, *to*, *among*, *during;* **on fīf oððe syx** 109, 6 = *into five or six parts;* **on weg** 140, 10 = *away;* **on innan** 144, 5 = *within*, **on unriht** 145, 15 = *falsely*.
onbærnan (§ 126), *kindle*, *inspire*.
oncȳðð, f., *distress*, *suffering*.
ǫnd (**and**), *and*.
ǫndsaca, m., *adversary*.
ǫndswarian (§ 130), *answer*.
ǫndweard, adj., *present*.
onfēng, see **onfōn**.
onfeohtan (§ 110), *fight*.
onfindan (§ 110), *find out*, *discover;* pret. indic. 3d sing., **onfunde**.
onfōn (§ 118), *receive*, *seize violently*.
onfunde, see **onfindan**.
ongēan, prep., *against*, *towards* (with dat. and acc.).
ongēan, adv., *just across*, *opposite*.
Ǫngelcynn (**Angel-**), n., *Angle kin*, *English people*, *England*.
Ǫngelðēod (**Angel-**), f., *the English people or nation*.
ongemang (**-mǫng**), *among* (with dat.).
ongietan (**-gitan**) (§ 115), *perceive*, *see*, *understand*.
onginnan (§ 110), *begin*, *attempt*.
onlūtan (§ 109), *bow*, *incline* (intrans.) [lout = a stooper].
onrīdan (§ 102), *ride against*, *make a raid on*.
onsęndan (§ 127), *send*.
onslǣpan (**onslēpan**) (§ 126), *fall asleep*, *sleep*.
onspǫnnan (§ 117), *loosen* [unspan]; pret. 3d sing. indic., **onspēon**.
onspringan (§ 110), *spring apart*, *unspring*.

onstāl, m., *institution, supply.*
onstęllan (§ 128), *establish;* pret. 3d sing. indic., **onstealde.**
onwæcnan (§ 127), *awake* (intrans.).
onweald (**-wald**), m., *power, authority* [wield].
onwęndan (§ 127), *change, overturn* [to wind].
ōr, n., *beginning.*
oð (§ 94, (2)), *until, as far as* (of time and place); **oð ðæt, oð ðe**, *until.*
oðberan (§ 114), *bear away.*
ōðer, *other, second;* **ōðer . . . ōðer**, *the one . . . the other.*
oðfæstan (§ 127), *set to* (a task).
oðfeallan (§ 117), *fall off, decline.*
oððe, *or;* **oððe . . . oððe**, *either . . . or.*

P.

plega, m., *play, festivity.*
port, m., *port* [Lat. portus].

R.

rād, f., *raid.*
rǣcan (§ 126), *reach;* pret. 3d sing., **rǣhte.**
ræst, see **ręst.**
Rēadingas, m. pl., *Reading* (in Berkshire).
ręccan (§ 128), *narrate, tell;* pret. pl. indic., **ręhton, reahton.**
ręccelēas, *reckless, careless.*
ręced, n., *house, hall.*
regnian (**rēnian**) (§ 130), *adorn, prepare;* past part., **geregnad.**
regollīc (**-lec**), *according to rule, regular.*
rēn-weard, m., *mighty warden, guard, champion.*
ręst (**ræst**), f., *rest, resting-place, bed.*
rēðe, *fierce, furious.*
rīce, *rich, powerful, aristocratic.*
rīce, n., *realm, kingdom* [bishopric].
rīcsian (§ 130), *rule.*
rīdan (§ 102), *ride.*
rīman (§ 126), *count* [rime].
rinc, m., *man, warrior.*
rōd, f., *rood, cross;* **rōde tācen**, *sign of the cross.*
Rōmware, m. pl., *Romans.*
rǫnd (**rand**), m., *shield.*
rūn, f., *rune, secret meditation* [to round = to whisper].
rycene (**ricene**), *quickly, rashly.*
ryhtnorðanwind, m., *straight north-wind.*

S.

sǣ, f., *sea.*
sǣ-bāt, m., *sea-boat.*
sǣd, n., *seed.*
sǣde, see **sęcgan.**
sǣl, m. f., *time, happiness* [sil-ly]; **on sǣlum** 137, 22 = *joyous, merry.*
sǣlan (§ 126), *bind.*
sǣ-līðend (§ 68, (3)), m., *seafarer* (nom. and acc. pl. same as nom. and acc. sing.).
sam . . . sam, *whether . . . or.*
same, *similarly;* **swā same**, *just the same, in like manner.*
samod, see **sǫmod.**
sanct, m., f., *saint* [Lat. sanctus]; gen. sing., **sanctæ**, f., **sancti**, m.
sang, see **sǫng.**
sār, f., n., *sore, pain, wound.*
sār, adj., *sore, grievous.*
sāre, *sorely.*

sāwan (§ 117,) *sow.*
sāwol, f., *soul;* oblique cases, sing., **sāwle** (§ 39, Note).
scacan (**sceacan**) (§ 116), *shake, go, depart;* past part., **scacen, sceacen.**
scadu-helm, m., *cover of night, shadow-covering* [shadow-helm]; **scadu-helma gesceapu**, see Note on 138, 2–6.
sceal, see **sculan.**
scēap, n., *sheep.*
scēat, m., *corner, region, quarter* [sheet]; **eorðan scēatta** 139, 14 = *in the regions of earth* (gen. used as locative).
scēawi(g)an (§ 130), *view, see* [shew].
scēawung, f., *seeing.*
sceolde, see **sculan.**
scēop (**scōp**), see **scieppan.**
scēowyrhta, m., *shoe-maker.*
scęððan (§ 116), *injure, scathe* (with dat.).
scieppan (§ 116), *create.*
Scieppend, m., *Creator.*
scīnan (§ 102), *shine.*
scip (**scyp**), n., *ship.*
scipen, n., *stall.*
sciprāp, m., *ship-rope, cable.*
scīr, f., *shire, district.*
Sciringeshēal, m., *Sciringesheal* (in Norway).
scolde, see **sculan.**
scǫmu, f., *shame, dishonor.*
Scōnēg, f., *Skaane* (southern district of the Scandinavian peninsula).
scopgereord, n., *poetic language.*
scrīðan (§ 102), *stride, stalk.*
sculan (§ 136; § 137, Note 2), *shall, have to, ought.*
Scyldingas, m. pl., *Scyldings, Danes.*
scyp, see **scip.**
Scyppend, see **Scieppend.**
sē, sēo, ðæt (§ 28; § 28, Note 3), *the; that; he, she, it; who, which, that;* **ðæs**, *from then, afterwards, therefore;* **ðæs ðe** (p. 110, l. 2), *with what;* **ðȳ . . . ðæt** (p. 110, ll. 7–8), *for this reason . . . because;* **tō ðǣm . . . swā**, *to such an extent . . . as;* **ðy** (**ðē**), *the* (adverbial, with comparatives); **ðȳ . . . ðȳ**, *the . . . the.*
seah, see **sēon.**
sealde, see **sęllan.**
searo-gimm, m., *artistic gem, jewel.*
searo-nīð, m., *cunning hatred, plot.*
searo-ðǫnc, m., *cunning thought, device.*
Seaxe, m. pl., *Saxons, Saxony.*
sēc(e)an (§ 128), *to seek, visit, meet.*
sęcg, m., *man, warrior.*
sęcgan (§ 132), *say, tell.*
sefa, m., *mind, spirit.*
sēfte, *more easily* (comparative of **sōfte**.
segel, m., n., *sail;* dat. sing. = **segle.**
seglian (§ 130), *sail.*
sęle, m., *hall.*
sęledrēam, m., *hall joy, festivity.*
sęle-ful, n., *hall cup.*
sęlesęcg, m., *hall warrior, retainer.*
sēlest, *best* (no positive).
self (**sylf**), *self, himself* (declined as strong or weak adjective).

sęllan (syllan) (§ 128), *give* [sell, han(d)sel].
sęmninga, *forthwith, straightway.*
sęndan (§ 127), *send.*
sēo, see **sē**.
sēoc, *sick.*
seofon (syfan), *seven.*
seolh, m., *seal;* gen. sing. = **sēoles** (§ 27, (3)).
sēon (§ 118), *see, look.*
seonu, f., *sinew;* nom. pl., **seonowe**.
sess, m., *seat.*
sibb, f., *friendship, peace* [gossip].
sidu (siodu), m., *custom, morality, good conduct.*
sīe, see **bēon**.
siex, *six;* **syxa (siexa) sum**, see **sum**.
siextig, *sixty.*
sige, m., *victory.*
sige-folc, n., *victorious people.*
sige-lēas, *victory-less, of defeat.*
sige-rōf, *victory-famed, victorious.*
sige-wǣpen, n., *victory-weapon.*
siglan (§ 127), *sail.*
Sillende, *Zealand.*
sinc, n., *treasure, prize.*
sinc-fæt, n., see 137, 1 [treasure-vat].
sinc-ðęgu, f., *receiving of treasure* [**ðicgan**].
sind, sint, sindon, see **bēon**.
singan (§ 110), *sing.*
sittan (§ 115, Note 2), *sit, take position.*
sīð, m., *journey, time;* **forman sīðe** 139, 2 = *the first time* (instr. sing.).
sīðian (§ 130), *journey.*
siððan, *after that, afterwards, after.*
slǣp, m., *sleep.*
slǣpan (§ 117), *sleep.*
slēan (§ 118), *slay* [slow-worm].
slītan (§ 102), *slit, tear to pieces.*
slīðen, *savage, perilous.*
smæl, *narrow.*
smalost, see **smæl**.
snāw, m., *snow.*
snot(t)or, *wise, prudent.*
sōhte, see **sēcan**.
sǫmod (samod), *together.*
sōna, *soon.*
sǫng, m., n., *song, poem.*
sǫngcræft, m., *art of song and poetry.*
sorg (sorh), f., *sorrow.*
sōð, *true.*
sōð, n., *truth;* **tō sōðe**, *for a truth, truly, verily.*
sōð-fæst, *truthful, just.*
sōðlīce, *truly.*
spēd, f., *possessions, success, riches* [speed].
spēdig, *rich, prosperous.*
spell, n., *story, tale* [gospel].
spēow, see **spōwan**.
spere, n., *spear.*
spor, n., *track, footprint.*
spōwan (§ 117), *succeed* (impersonal with dat.).
sprǣc, f., *speech, language.*
sprecan (§ 115), *speak.*
spyrian (spyrigean) (§ 130), *follow* (intrans.) [**spor**].
stæf, *staff, rod;* pl. = *literature, learning.*
stælhrān, m., *decoy-reindeer.*
stælwierðe, *serviceable* (see p. 56, Note 2).
stǣr, n., *story, narrative* [Lat. historia].
stæð, n., *shore.*

stān, m., *stone, rock.*
stān-boga, m., *stone-arch* [stone-bow].
standan, see **stǫndan**.
stānhlið (-hleoð), n., *stone-cliff.*
stapol, m., *column* [staple].
starian (§ 125), *stare, gaze.*
stęde, m., *place.*
stelan (§ 114), *steal.*
stęnt, see **stǫndan**.
stēorbord, n., *starboard, right side of a ship.*
stęppan (§ 116), *step, advance;* pret. indic. 3d sing., **stōp**.
stilnes, f., *stillness, quiet.*
stǫndan (§ 116), *stand.*
stōp, see **stęppan**.
storm, m., *storm.*
stōw, f., *place* [stow, and in names of places].
strang, see **strǫng**.
stręngest, see **strǫng**.
strǫng (§ 96, (2)), *strong.*
styccemælum, *here and there.*
sum (§ 91, Note 2), *some, certain, a certain one;* **hē syxa sum** 104, 25 = *he with five others.*
sumera, see **sumor**.
sumor, m., *summer;* dat. sing. = **sumera**.
sumorlida, m., *summer-army.*
sundor, *apart.*
sunne, f., *sun.*
sunu, m., *son.*
sūð, *south, southwards.*
sūðan (§ 93, (5)), *from the south;* **be sūðan**, *south of* (§ 94, (4)).
sūðeweard, *southward.*
sūðryhte, *southward.*
swā (swæ), *so, as, how, as if;* **swā swā**, *just as, as far as;* **swā . . . swā**, *the . . . the, as . . . as;* **swā hwæt swā**, *whatsoever* (§ 77, Note).
swæs, *beloved, own.*
swæð, n., *track, footprint* [swath].
swaðul, m. ? n. ?, *smoke.*
swealh, see **swelgan**.
swefan (§ 115), *sleep, sleep the sleep of death.*
swefn, n., *sleep, dream.*
swēg, m., *sound, noise.*
swegle, *bright, clear.*
swēlan (§ 126), *burn* [sweal].
swelgan (§ 110), *swallow;* pret. indic. 3d sing., **swealh**; subj., **swulge**.
swellan (§ 110), *swell.*
Swēoland, n., *Sweden.*
Swēom, m., dat. pl., *the Swedes.*
sweotol, *clear.*
sweotole, *clearly.*
swęrian (§ 116), *swear.*
swēte, *sweet.*
swētnes (-nis), f., *sweetness.*
swift (swyft), *swift.*
swilc (swylc) (§ 77), *such.*
swilce, *in such manner, as, likewise; as if, as though* (with subj.).
swimman (§ 110), *swim.*
swīn (swȳn), n., *swine, hog.*
swīnsung, f., *melody, harmony.*
swīðe (swȳðe), *very, exceedingly, greatly.*
swīðost, *chiefly, almost.*
swōr, see **swęrian**.
swulge, see **swelgan**.
swuster (§ 68, (2)), f., *sister.*
swylce (swelce), see **swilce**.
swȳn, see **swīn**.
swynsian (§ 130), *resound.*

swȳðe, see **swīðe**.
swȳð-ferhð, *strong-souled.*
sylf, see **self.**
syll, f., *sill, floor.*
syllan, see **sęllan.**
symbel, n., *feast, banquet.*
symle, *always.*
synd, see **bēon.**
syn-dolh, n., *ceaseless wound, incurable wound.*
syndriglīce, *specially.*
synn, f., *sin.*
syn-scaða, m., *ceaseless scather, perpetual foe.*
syn-snǣd, f., *huge bit* [ceaseless bit].
syððan, see **siððan.**
syx, see **siex.**
syxtig, see **siextig.**

T.

tācen, n., *sign, token;* dat. sing., **tācne** (§ 33, Note).
tǣcan (§ 128), *teach.*
tam, *tame.*
tela, *properly, well* [**til**].
tęllan (§ 128), *count, deem* [tell]; pret. 3d sing., **tealde.**
Tęmes, f., *the Thames.*
tēon, *arrange, create;* pret. sing., **tēode.**
Terfinna, m., gen. pl., *the Terfins.*
tēð, see **tōð.**
tīd, f., *tide, time, hour.*
tīen (**tȳn**), *ten.*
til(1), *good.*
tīma, m., *time.*
tintreglīc, *full of torment.*
tō (§ 94, (1)), *to, for, according to, as;* **tō hrōfe** 114, 2 = *for* (*as*) *a roof* [cf. Biblical *to wife*, modern *to boot*].
tō, adv., *too.*
tōbrecan (p. 81, Note 2), *break to pieces, knock about.*
tōdǣlan (§ 126), *divide.*
tōemnes (**tō emnes**) (§ 94, (4)), *along, alongside.*
tōforan (§ 94, (1)), *before.*
tōgeðēodan (§ 126), *join.*
tōhopa, m., *hope.*
tōlicgan (§ 115, Note 2), *separate, lie between;* 3d sing. indic. = **tōlīð.**
tōlīð, see **tōlicgan.**
tolūcan (109, Note 1), *destroy* [the prefix **tō** reverses the meaning of **lūcan**, *to lock*].
torn, **m.**, *anger, insult.*
tōð (§ 68, (1)), m., *tooth.*
tōweard (§ 94, (1)), *toward.*
tōweard, adj., *approaching, future.*
trēow, f., *pledge, troth.*
trēownes, f., *trust.*
Trūsō, *Drausen* (a city on the Drausensea).
tūn, m., *town, village.*
tunge, f., *tongue.*
tūngerēfa, m., *bailiff* [town-reeve; so sheriff = shire-reeve].
tungol, n., *star.*
twā, see **twēgen.**
twēgen, (§ 89), *two, twain.*
twēntig, *twenty.*
tȳn, see **tīen.**

Ð.

ðā, *then, when;* **ðā . . . ðā**, *when . . . then;* **ðā ðā**, *then when = when.*
ðā, see **sē.**
ðǣr, *there, where;* **ðǣr ðǣr**, *there where = where;* **ðǣr . . .**

swā 142, 4 = *wheresoever;* 145, 6 = *if so be that.*

ðæs, *afterwards, therefore, thus, because;* see **sē.**

ðæt (**ðætte** = **ðæt ðe**), *that, so that.*

ðafian (§ 130), *consent to.*

ðanc, see **ðǫnc.**

ðancian (**ðǫncian**) (§ 130), *thank.*

ðanon, see **ðǫnan.**

ðās, see **ðēs.**

ðē, see **sē** (instr. sing.) and **ðū.**

ðe (§ 75), *who, whom, which, that.*

ðēah, *though, although;* **ðēah ðe,** *though, although.*

ðearf, see **ðurfan.**

ðearf, f., *need, benefit.*

ðēaw, m., *habit, custom* [thews].

ðegn (**ðegen**), m., *servant, thane, warrior.*

ðęnc(e)an (§ 128), *think, intend.*

ðening(-ung), f., *service;* the pl. may mean *book of service* (117, 17).

ðēod, f., *people, nation.*

ðēoden, m., *prince, lord.*

ðēodscipe, m., *discipline.*

ðēon (**ðȳwan**) (§ 126), *oppress* [**ðēow**].

ðēow, m., *servant.*

ðēowa, m., *servant.*

ðēowotdōm (**ðīowot-**), m., *service.*

ðēs (§ 73), *this.*

ðider, *thither.*

ðiderweard, *thitherward.*

ðīn (§ 76), *thine.*

ðing, n., *thing;* **ǣnige ðinga,** see 140, 15, Note.

ðingan (§ 127), *arrange, appoint.*

ðis, see **ðēs.**

ðissum, see **ðēs.**

ðōhte, ðōhton, see **ðęncean.**

ðolian (§ 130), *endure* [thole].

ðǫnan, *thence.*

ðǫnc, m., *thanks.*

ðone, see **sē.**

ðonne, *than, then, when;* **ðonne . . . ðonne,** *when . . . then.*

ðrāg, f., *time.*

ðrēa-nȳd, f., *compulsion, oppression, misery* [throe-need].

ðrēora, see **ðrīe.**

ðridda, *third.*

ðrīe (**ðrȳ**) (§ 89), *three.*

ðrīm, see **ðrīe.**

ðrīst-hȳdig, *bold-minded.*

ðrītig, *thirty.*

ðrōwung, f., *suffering.*

ðrȳ, see **ðrīe.**

ðrym(m), m., *renown, glory, strength.*

ðrȳð, f., *power, multitude* (pl. used in sense of sing.); **asca ðrȳðe** 152, 23 = *the might of spears.*

ðrȳð-ærn, n., *mighty house, noble hall.*

ðrȳð-word, n., *mighty word, excellent discourse.*

ðū (§ 72), *thou.*

ðūhte, see **ðyncan.**

ðurfan (§ 136), *need;* pres. indic. 3d sing., **ðearf;** pret. 3d sing., **ðorfte;** **for-ðām mē wītan ne ðearf Waldend fīra morðor-bealo māga** 145, 17 = *therefore the Ruler of men need not charge me with the murder of kinsmen.*

ðurh (§ 94, (2)), *through.*

ðus, *thus.*

ðūsend, *thousand.*

ðȳ, see **sē**.
ðyder, see **ðider**.
ðyncan (§ 128), *seem, appear* (impersonal); **mē ðyncð**, *methinks, it seems to me;* **him ðūhte**, *it seemed to him.*

U.

ūhta, m., *dawn;* gen. pl., **ūhtna**.
unbeboht, *unsold* [**bebycgan** = *to sell*].
uncūð, *unknown, uncertain* [uncouth].
under, *under* (with dat. and acc.).
understǫndan (§ 116), *understand.*
underðēodan (**-ðīedan**) (§ 126), *subject to;* past part. **underðēoded** = *subjected to, obedient to* (with dat.).
unforbærned, *unburned.*
unfrið, m., *hostility.*
ungefōge, *excessively.*
ungemete, *immeasurably, very.*
ungesewenlīc, *invisible* [past part. of **sēon** + **līc**].
unlyfigend, *dead, dead man* [unliving].
unlȳtel, *no little, great.*
unriht, n., *wrong;* **on unriht**, see **on**.
unrihtwīsnes, f., *unrighteousness.*
unspēdig, *poor.*
unwearnum, *unawares.*
ūp (**ūpp**), *up.*
ūpāstīgnes, f., *ascension* [**stīgan**].
ūp-lang, *upright.*
ūre (§ 76), *our.*
usses = gen. sing. neut. of **ūser**, see **ic**.
ūt, *out, outside.*
ūtan, *from without, outside.*
ūtanbordes, *abroad.*
ūtgǫng, m., *exodus.*
uton, *let us* (with infin.) [literally *let us go* with infin. of purpose (see 137, 19–20, Note); **uton** = **wuton**, corrupted form of 1st pl. subj. of **wītan**, *to go*].
ūt-weard, *outward bound, moving outwards.*

W.

wāc, *weak, insignificant.*
wacian (§ 130), *watch, be on guard;* imperative sing., **waca**.
wadan (§ 116), *go, tread* [wade].
wǣg, m., *wave.*
Wǣgmundigas, m., *Wægmundings* (family to which Beowulf and Wiglaf belonged).
wæl, n., *slaughter, the slain.*
wæl-blēat, *deadly* [slaughter-pitiful].
wælgīfre, *greedy for slaughter.*
wæl-rǣs, m., *mortal combat* [slaughter-race].
wæl-rēow, *fierce in strife.*
wælsliht (**-sleaht**), m., *slaughter.*
wælstōw, f., *battle-field* [slaughter-place]; **wælstōwe gewald**, *possession of the battle-field.*
wǣpen, n., *weapon.*
wǣre, see **bēon**.
wæs, see **bēon**.
wæter, n., *water.*
waldend, see **wealdend**.
wan (**wǫn**), *wan, dark.*
wanhȳdig, *heedless, rash.*
wānigean (**wānian**) (§ 130), *bewail, lament* (trans.) [whine].

ȝarian (§ 130), *attend, accompany.*
ȝāt, see **witan**.
ȝaðum, m., *wave;* gen. pl., **waðema**.
ȝeal(l), m., *wall, rampart.*
ȝealdend (§ 68, (3)), *wielder, ruler, lord.*
ȝealh, m., *foreigner, Welshman.*
ȝealhstōd, m., *interpreter, translator.*
ȝeallan (§ 117), *well up, boil, be agitated;* pret. 3d. sing. indic., **wēoll**.
ȝealsteal(l), m., *wall-place, foundation.*
ȝeard, m., *ward, keeper.*
ȝearð, see **weorðan**.
ȝeaxan (§ 117), *wax, grow.*
ȝeg, m., *way;* **hys weges**, see § 93, (3); **on weg**, see **on**.
ȝel(l), *well, readily.*
ȝela, m., *weal; prosperity, riches.*
ȝelm, see **wielm**.
ȝēnan (§ 126), *ween, think, expect.*
ȝęndan (§ 127), *change, translate* [wend, **windan**].
ȝęnian (§ 130), *entertain;* **węnian mid wynnum** 149, 20 = *entertain joyfully;* **węnede tō wiste** 149, 27 = *feasted* (trans.).
Ȝeonodland (**Weonoðland**), n., *Wendland.*
ȝeorc, n., *work, deed.*
ȝeorold (**weoruld**), see **woruld**.
ȝeorpan (§ 110), *throw.*
ȝeorðan (§ 110), *be, become.*
ȝer, m., *man* [werwulf].
ȝērig, *weary, dejected.*
ȝerod, n., *army, band.*
ȝesan, see **bēon**.
Wesseaxe, m. pl., *West Saxons;* gen. pl. = **Wesseaxna**.
west, *west, westward.*
westanwind, m., *west wind.*
wēste, *waste.*
wēsten, n., *waste, desert.*
Westsǣ, f., *West Sea* (west of Norway).
Westseaxe, m. pl., *West Saxons, Wessex.*
wīc, n., *dwelling* [bailiwick].
wīcian (§ 130), *stop, lodge, sojourn* [**wīc**].
wīdre, adv., *farther, more widely* (comparative of **wīde**).
wīdsǣ, f., *open sea.*
wielm (**welm**), m., *welling, surging flood* [**weallan**].
wīf, n., *wife, woman.*
wīg, m., n., *war, battle.*
wiga, m., *warrior.*
wild, *wild.*
wildor, n., *wild beast, reindeer;* dat. pl. = **wildrum** (§ 33, Note).
willa, m., *will, pleasure;* gen. pl., **wilna** (138, 16).
willan (§ 134; § 137, Note 3), *will, intend, desire.*
wilnung, f., *wish, desire;* **for ðǣre wilnunga** 119, 4 = *purposely.*
Wiltūn, m., *Wilton* (in Wiltshire).
wīn, n., *wine.*
wīn-ærn, n., *wine-hall.*
Wīnburne, f., *Wimborne* (in Dorsetshire).
wind, m., *wind.*
wine, m., *friend.*
Winedas, m. pl., *the Wends, the Wend country.*
wine-dryhten, m., *friendly lord.*
winelēas, *friendless.*

winemǣg, m., *friendly kinsman.*
wīngeard, m., *vineyard.*
winnan (§ 110), *strive, fight* [win].
wīnsæl, n., *wine-hall.*
wīn-sęle, m., *wine-hall.*
winter, m., *winter;* dat. sing. = **wintra.**
wintercearig, *winter-sad, winter-worn.*
wīs, *wise.*
wīsdōm, m., *wisdom.*
wīse, *wisely.*
wīse, f., *manner, matter, affair* [in this wise].
wīs-fæst, *wise* [wise-fast; cf. shame-faced = shamefast].
wīs-hycgende, *wise-thinking.*
Wīsle, f., *the Vistula.*
Wīslemūða, m., *the mouth of the Vistula.*
wisse, see **witan.**
wist, f., *food, feast.*
wita, m., *wise man, councillor.*
witan (§ 136), *know, show, experience.*
wītan (§ 102), *reproach, blame* (with acc. of thing, dat. of person).
wīte, n., *punishment.*
Wītland, n., *Witland* (in Prussia).
wið (94, (3)), *against, toward, with;* **wið ēastan and wið ūpp on emnlange ðǣm bȳnum lande**, *toward the east, and upwards along the cultivated land;* **wið earm gesæt** 139, 11 = *supported himself on his arm;* **genęred wið nīðe** (dat.) 143, 11 = *had preserved it from (against) violence.*
wiðerwinna, m., *adversary.*
wiðfōn (§ 118), *grapple with* (with dat.).
wiðhabban (§ 133), *withstand, resist* (with dat.).
wiðstǫndan (§ 116), *withstand, resist* (with dat.).
wlǫnc, *proud.*
wōd, see **wadan.**
wolcen, n., *cloud* [welkin]; dat. pl., **wolcnum.**
wolde, see **willan.**
wōma, m., *noise, alarm, terror.*
wǫn, see **wan.**
wōp, n., *weeping.*
word, n., *word.*
wōrian (§ 130), *totter, crumble.*
worn, m., *large number, multitude.*
woruld, f., *world;* **tō worulde būtan ǣghwilcum ęnde** 102, 18 = *world without end.*
woruldcund, *worldly, secular.*
woruldhād, m., *secular life* [world-hood].
woruldrīce, n., *world-kingdom, world.*
woruldðing, n., *worldly affair.*
wræclāst, m., *track or path of an exile.*
wrāð, *wroth, angry; foe, enemy.*
wrītan (§ 102), *write.*
wucu, f., *week.*
wudu, m., *wood, forest.*
wuldor, n., *glory.*
Wuldorfæder (§ 68, (2)), m., *Father of glory;* gen. sing., **Wuldorfæder.**
Wuldur-cyning, m., *King of glory.*
wulf, m., *wolf.*
wund, f., *wound.*
wund, *wounded.*

wunden, *twisted, woven, convolute* (past part. of **windan**).
wundor, n., *wonder, marvel.*
wundrian (§ 130), *wonder at* (with gen.).
wurdon, see **weorðan.**
wurðan, see **weorðan.**
wylf, f., *she wolf.*
wyllað, see **willan.**
wyn-lēas, *joyless.*
wynn, f., *joy, delight.*
wynsum, *winsome, delightful.*
wyrc(e)an (§ 128), *work, make, compose.*
wyrd, f., *weird, fate, destiny.*
wyrhta, m., *worker, creator* [-wright].
wyrm, m., *worm, dragon, serpent.*
wyrmlīca, m., *serpentine ornamentation.*
wyrð (**weorð**), *worthy;* see 114, 7–9, Note.

Y.

ylca, see **ilca.**
yldan (§ 127), *delay, postpone* [**eald**].
yldu, f., *age* [eld].
ymbe (**ymb**) (§ 94, (2)), *about, around, concerning* [*um*while] ; **ðæs ymb iii niht** 99, 2 = *about three nights afterwards.*
ymb-ēode, see **ymb-gān.**
ymbe-sittend, *one who sits* (*dwells*) *round about another, neighbor.*
ymb-gān (§ 134), *go about, go around, circle* (with acc.).
yrfe-weard, m., *heir.*
yrnan, see **iernan.**
yrre, *ireful, angry.*
yteren, *of an otter* [**otor**].
ȳðan (§ 126), *lay waste* (as by a deluge) [**ȳð** = *wave*].

II. GLOSSARY.

MODERN ENGLISH — OLD ENGLISH.

A.

a, *ān* (§ **77**).
abide, *bīdan* (§ **102**), *ābīdan*.
about, *be* (§ **94**, (1)), *ymbe* (§ **94**, (2)); **to write about**, *wrītan be;* **to speak about** (= **of**), *sprecan ymbe;* **about two days afterwards**, *ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas.*
adder, *nǣdre* (§ **64**).
afterwards, *ðæs* (§ **93**, (3)).
against, *wiðˇ* (§ **94**, (3)), *on* (§ **94**, (3)).
Alfred, *Ælfred* (§ **26**).
all, *eall* (§ **80**).
also, *ēac.*
although, *ðēah* (§ **105**, 2).
always, *ā; ealne weg* (§ **98**, (1)).
am, *eom* (§ **40**).
an, see **a**.
and, *ęnd* (*and*).
angel, *ęngel* (§ **26**).
animal, *dēor* (§ **32**).
are, *sind*, *sint*, *sindon* (§ **40**).
army, *werod* (§ **32**); **Danish army**, *hęre* (§ **26**); **English army**, *fierd* (§ **38**).
art, *eart* (§ **40**).
Ashdown, *Æscesdūn* (§ **38**).
ask, *biddan* (§ **65**, Note 3; § **115**, Note 2).
away, *aweg.*

B.

battle-field, *wælstōw* (§ **38**).
be, *bēon* (§ **40**); **not to be**, see § **40**, Note 2.
bear, *beran* (§ **114**).
because, *for ðǣm* (*ðe*), *for ðon* (*ðe*).
become, *weorðan* (§ **110**).
before (temporal conjunction), *ǣr*, *ǣr ðǣm ðe* (§ **105**, 2).
begin, *onginnan* (§ **107**, (1); § **110**).
belong to, *belimpan tō* + dative (§ **110**).
best, see **good**.
better, see **good**.
bind, *bindan* (§ **110**).
bird, *fugol* (§ **26**).
bite, *bītan* (§ **102**).
body, *līc* (§ **32**).
bone, *bān* (§ **32**).
book, *bōc* (§ **68**).
both . . . and, *ǣgðer ge . . . ge.*
boundary, *mearc* (§ **38**).
boy, *cnapa* (§ **64**).

break, *brēotan* (§ **109**), *brecan*, *ābrecan* (§ **114**).
brother, *brōðor* (§ **68**, (2)).
but, *ac*.
by, *fṛǫm* (*fram*) (§ **94**, (1); § **141**, Note 1).

C.

Cædmon, *Cædmǫn* (§ **68**, (1)).
call, *hātan* (§ **117**, (1)).
cease, cease from, *geswīcan* (§ **102**).
child, *bearn* (§ **32**).
choose, *cēósan* (§ **109**).
Christ, *Crīst* (§ **26**).
church, *cirice* (§ **64**).
come, *cuman* (§ **114**).
comfort, *frōfor* (§ **38**).
companion, *gefēra* (§ **64**).
consolation, *frōfor* (§ **38**).
create, *gescieppan* (§ **116**).

D.

Danes, *Dęne* (§ **47**).
day, *dæg* (§ **26**).
dead, *dēad* (§ **80**).
dear (= **beloved**), *lēof* (§ **80**).
deed, *dǣd* (§ **38**).
die, *cwelan* (§ **114**).
division (of troops), *gefylce* (§ 32), *getruma* (§ **64**).
do, *dōn* (§ **134**).
door, *dor* (§ **32**), *duru* (§ **52**).
drink, *drincan* (§ **110**).
during, *on* (§ **94**, (3)). See also § **98**.
dwell in, *būan on* (§ **126**, Note 2).

E.

earl, *eorl* (§ **26**).
endure, *drēogan* (§ **109**).
England, *Ęnglalǫnd* (§ **32**).
enjoy, *brūcan* (§ **62**, Note 1; § **109**, Note 1).
every, *ǣlc* (§ **77**).
eye, *ēage* (§ **64**).

F.

father, *fæder* (§ **68**, (2)).
field, *feld* (§ **51**).
fight, *feohtan*, *gefeohtan* (§ **110**).
find, *findan* (§ **110**).
finger, *finger* (§ **26**).
fire, *fȳr* (§ **32**).
fisherman, *fiscere* (§ **26**).
foreigner, *wealh* (§ **26**).
freedom, *frēodōm* (§ **26**).
friend, *wine* (§ **45**), *frēond* (§ **68**, (3)).
friendship, *frēondscipe* (§ **45**).
full, *full* (with genitive) (§ **80**).

G.

gain the victory, *sige habban*, *sige niman*.
gift, *giefu* (§ **38**).
give, *giefan* (with dative of indirect object) (§ **115**).
glad, *glæd* (§ **81**).
glove, *glōf* (§ **38**).
go, *gān* (§ **134**), *faran* (§ **116**).
God, *God* (§ **26**).
good, *gōd* (§ **80**).

H.

Halgoland, *Hālgoland* (§ **32**).
hall, *heall* (§ **38**).

hand, *hǫnd* (§ **52**).
hard, *heard* (§ **80**).
have, *habban* (§ **34**); **not to have**, *nabban* (p. 32, Note).
he, *hē* (§ **53**).
head, *hēafod* (§ **32**).
hear, *hīeran* (§ **126**).
heaven, *heofon* (§ **26**).
help, *helpan* (with dative) (§ **110**).
herdsman, *hierde* (§ **26**).
here, *hēr*.
hither, *hider*.
hold, *healdan* (§ **117**, (2)).
holy, *hālig* (§ **82**).
horse, *mearh* (§ **26**), *hors* (§ **32**).
house, *hūs* (§ **32**).

I.

I, *ic* (§ **72**).
in, *on* (§ **94**, (3)).
indeed, *sōðlīce*.
injure, *sc̣ęððan* (with dative) (§ **116**).
it, *hit* (§ **53**).

K.

king, *cyning* (§ **26**).
kingdom, *rīce* (§ **32**), *cynerīce* (§ **32**).

L.

land, *lǫnd* (§ **32**).
language, *sprǣc* (§ **38**), *geðēode* (§ **32**).
large, *micel* (§ **82**).
leisure, *ǣmetta* (§ **64**).
let us, *uton* (with infinitive).
limb, *lim* (§ **32**).
little, *lȳtel* (§ **82**).
live in, *būan on* (§ **126**, Note 2).
lord, *hlāford* (§ **26**).
love, *lufian* (§ **121**).
love (noun), *lufu* (§ **38**).

M.

make, *wyrcan* (§ **128**).
man, *sęcg* (§ **26**), *mǫn* (§ **68**, (1)).
many, *mǫnig* (§ **82**).
mare, *mȳre* (§ **64**).
mead, *medu* (§ **51**).
Mercians, *Mierce* (§ **47**).
milk, *meolc* (§ **38**).
month, *mōnað* (§ **68**, (1), Note 1).
mouth, *mūð* (§ **26**).
much, *micel* (§ **96**, (3)), *micle* (§ **97**, (2)).
murderer, *bǫna* (§ **64**).
my, *mīn* (§ **76**).

N.

natives, *lǫndlēode* (§ **47**).
nephew, *nefa* (§ **64**).
new, *nīwe* (§ **82**).
Northumbrians, *Norðymbre* (§ **47**).
not, *ne*.

O.

of, see **about**.
on, *on* (§ **94**, (3)), *ofer* (§ **94**, (2)).
one, *ān* (§ **89**); **the one . . . the other**, *ōðer . . . ōðer*.
other, *ōðer* (§ **77**).
our, *ūre* (§ **76**).
ox, *oxa* (§ **64**).

P.

place, *stōw* (§ **38**).
plundering, *hęrgung* (§ **38**).

poor, *earm* (§ **80**), *unspēdig* (§ **82**).
prosperous, *spēdig* (§ **82**).

Q.

queen, *cwēn* (§ **49**).

R.

reindeer, *hrān* (§ **26**).
remain, *bīdan* (§ **102**), *ābīdan*.
retain possession of the battle-field, *āgan wælstōwe gewald*.
rich, *rīce* (§ **82**), *spēdig* (§ **82**).
ride, *rīdan* (§ **102**).

S.

say, *cweðan* (§ **115**), *sęcgan* (§ **133**).
scribe, *bōcere* (§ **26**).
seal, *seolh* (§ **26**).
see, *sēon* (§ **118**), *gesēon*.
serpent, *nǣdre* (§ **64**).
servant, *ðēowa* (§ **64**), *ðegn* (§ **26**).
shall, *sculan* (§ **136**; § **137**, Note 2).
she, *hēo* (§ **53**).
shepherd, *hierde* (§ **26**).
ship, *scip* (§ **32**).
shire, *scīr* (§ **38**).
shoemaker, *scēowyrhta* (§ **64**).
side, on both sides, *on gehwæðre hęnd*.
six, *siex* (§ **90**).
slaughter, *wæl* (§ **32**), *wælsliht* (§ **45**).
small, *lȳtel* (§ **82**).
son, *sunu* (§ **51**).
soul, *sāwol* (§ **38**).
speak, *sprecan* (§ **115**).
spear, *gār* (§ **26**), *spere* (§ **32**).
stand, *stęndan* (§ **116**).
stone, *stān* (§ **26**).
stranger, *wealh* (§ **26**), *cuma* (§ **64**).
suffer, *drēogan* (§ **109**).
sun, *sunne* (§ **64**).
swift, *swift* (§ **80**).

T.

take, *niman* (§ **110**).
than, *ðonne* (§ **96**, (6)).
thane, *ðegn* (§ **26**).
that (conjunction), *ðæt*.
that (demonstrative), *sē*, *sēo*, *ðæt* (§ **28**).
that (relative), *ðe* (§ **75**).
the, *sē*, *sēo*, *ðæt* (§ **28**).
then, *ðā*, *ðonne*.
these, see **this**.
they, *hīe* (§ **53**).
thing, *ðing* (§ **32**).
thirty, *ðrītig*.
this, *ðēs*, *ðēos*, *ðis* (§ **73**).
those, see **that** (demonstrative).
thou, *ðū* (§ **72**).
though, *ðēah* (§ **105**, 2).
three, *ðrīe* (§ **89**).
throne, ascend the throne, *tō rīce fōn*.
throw, *weorpan* (§ **110**).
to, *tō* (§ **94**, (1)).
tongue, *tunge* (§ **64**).
track, *spor* (§ **32**).
true, *sōð* (§ **80**).
truly, *sōðlīce*.
two, *twēgen* (§ **89**).

V.

very, *swīðe*.
vessel, *fæt* (§ **32**).
victory, *sige* (§ **45**).

W.

wall, *weall* (§ **26**).
warrior, *sęcg* (§ **26**), *eorl* (§ **26**).
way, *weg* (§ **26**).
weapon, *wǣpen* (§ **32**).
well, *wel* (§ **97**, (2)).
Welshman, *Wealh* (§ **26**).
went, see **go**.
westward, *west*, *westrihte*.
whale, *hwœl* (§ **26**).
what? *hwœt* (§ **74**).
when, *ðā*, *ðonne*.
where? *hwǣr*.
which, *ðe* (§ **75**).
who? *hwā* (§ **74**).
who (relative), *ðe* (§ **75**).
whosoever, *swā hwā swā* (§ **77**, Note).
will, *willan* (§ **134**; § **137**, Note 3).
Wilton, *Wiltūn* (§ **26**).
win, see **gain**.
wine, *wīn* (§ **32**).
wisdom, *wīsdōm* (§ **26**).
wise, *wīs* (§ **80**).
with, *mid* (§ **94**, (1)); **to fight with** (= **against**), *gefeohtan wiþ* (§ **94**, (3)).
withstand, *wiðstǫndan* (with dative) (§ **116**).
wolf, *wulf* (§ **26**), *wylf* (§ **38**).
woman, *wīf* (§ **32**).
word, *word* (§ **32**).
worm, *wyrm* (§ **45**).

Y.

ye, *gē* (§ **72**).
year, *gēar* (§ **32**).
yoke, *geoc* (§ **32**).
you, *ðū* (singular), *gē* (plural) (§ **72**).
your, *ðīn* (singular), *ēower* (plural) (§ **76**).

The Academy Series of English Classics.

THE works selected for this series are such as have gained a conspicuous and enduring place in literature; nothing is admitted either trivial in character or ephemeral in interest. Each volume is edited by a teacher of reputation, whose name is a guaranty of sound and judicious annotation. It is the aim of the Notes to furnish assistance only where it is absolutely needed, and, in general, to permit the author to be his own interpreter.

All the essays and speeches in the series (excepting Webster's Reply to Hayne) are printed without abridgment. The Plays of Shakespeare are expurgated only where necessary for school use.

Addison. *De Coverley Papers.* Edited by Samuel Thurber. Cloth, 35 cents.

Arnold. *Essays in Criticism.* Edited by Susan S. Sheridan. Cloth, 25 cents.

Rugby Chapel Edited by L. D. Syle. (In *Four English Poems.* Cloth, 25 cents.)

Sohrab and Rustum. Edited by George A. Watrous. (In *Three Narrative Poems.* Cloth, 30 cents.)

Burke. *Conciliation with the Colonies.* Edited by C. B. Bradley. Cloth, 30 cents.

Burns. *Selections.* Edited by Lois G. Hufford. Cloth, 35 cents.

Byron. *The Prisoner of Chillon.* Edited by L. D. Syle. (In *Four English Poems:* Cloth, 25 cents.)

Carlyle. *Essay on Burns.* Edited by H. W. Boynton. Cloth, 25 cents.

Essay on Boswell's Johnson. Edited by H. W. Boynton. Boards, 20 cents.

Coleridge. *The Ancient Mariner.* Edited by George A. Watrous. (In *Three Narrative Poems.* Cloth, 30 cents.)

Cowper. *John Gilpin's Ride.* Edited by L. D. Syle. (In *Four English Poems.* Cloth, 25 cents.)

George Eliot. *Silas Marner.* Edited by W. Patterson Atkinson. Cloth, 30 cents.

Emerson. *Select Essays and Poems.* Edited by Eva March Tappan. Cloth, 30 cents.

Goldsmith. *The Vicar of Wakefield.* Edited by R. Adelaide Witham. Cloth, 40 cents.

The Traveller and *The Deserted Village.* Edited by George A. Watrous. (In *Selected Poems.* Cloth, 30 cents.)

Academy Series of English Classics. (*Continued*)

Gray. *Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard* and *The Progress of Poesy.* Edited by G. A. Watrous. (In *Selected Poems.* Cloth, 30 cents.)

Irving. *Life of Goldsmith.* Edited by R. Adelaide Witham. Cloth, 40 cents.

Selections from the Sketch Book. Edited by Elmer E. Wentworth. Cloth, 35 cents.

Lowell. *Selections. The Vision of Sir Launfal and other Poems.* Edited by Dr. F. R. Lane. Cloth, 25 cents.

Macaulay. Edited by Samuel Thurber.

Essay on Addison; Clive; Hastings; Milton. Cloth, each, 25 cents.

Essay on Chatham; Johnson. Boards, each, 20 cents.

Essays on Milton and Addison. One volume, cloth, 35 cents.

Milton. *Paradise Lost, Books I. and II.* Edited by Henry W. Boynton. Cloth, 30 cents.

Minor Poems. Edited by Samuel Thurber. Cloth, 30 cents.

Pope. *The Rape of the Lock.* Edited by L. D. Syle. (In *Four English Poems.* Cloth, 25 cents.)

An Essay on Criticism. Edited by George A. Watrous. (In *Selected Poems.* Cloth, 30 cents.)

Scott. *The Lady of the Lake.* Edited by G. B. Aiton. Cloth, 30 cents.

Marmion. Edited by Mary E. Adams. Cloth, 30 cents.

Shakespeare. Edited by Samuel Thurber.

As You Like It; Julius Cæsar; Merchant of Venice; Macbeth. Cloth, each, 30 cents.

The Tempest. Boards, 20 cents; cloth, 30 cents.

Hamlet (with Pearson's *Questions on Hamlet*). Cloth, 35 cents.

Tennyson. *Enoch Arden.* Edited by George A. Watrous. (In *Three Narrative Poems.* Cloth, 30 cents.)

Idylls of the King: Selections. Edited by H. W. Boynton. Cloth, 30 cents.

Webster. *Reply to Hayne.* Edited by C. B. Bradley. Cloth, 25 cents.

Four English Poems: *The Rape of the Lock, John Gilpin's Ride, The Prisoner of Chillon,* and *Rugby Chapel.* Edited by L. D. Syle. Cloth, 25 cents.

Three Narrative Poems: *The Ancient Mariner, Sohrab and Rustum,* and *Enoch Arden.* Edited by G. A. Watrous. Cloth, 30 cents.

Selected Poems from Pope, Gray, and Goldsmith. Edited by George A. Watrous. Cloth, 30 cents.

De Quincey's Essays on Style, Rhetoric, and Language.

Edited by Professor FRED N. SCOTT, University of Michigan. 12mo. 276 pages. Price, 60 cents.

THE essays selected are those which deal directly with the theory of literature. The appendix contains such passages from De Quincey's other writings as will be of most assistance to the student. The introduction and notes are intended to reenforce, not to forestall, research.

Principles of Success in Literature.

By GEORGE HENRY LEWES. Edited with Introduction and Notes by Professor FRED N. SCOTT. 12mo, 159 pages. Price 50 cents.

THE object of reprinting this admirable little treatise on literature is to make it available for classes in rhetoric and literary criticism. Scarcely any other work will be found so thoroughly sound in principles, and so suggestive and inspiring.

The value of the present edition is greatly increased by the excellent introduction by Professor Scott, and by a full index, which adds much to its convenience.

Professor O. B. Clarke, *Ripon College, Ripon, Wisconsin:* Your reprint of Lewes's articles on "The Principles of Success in Literature" puts another sharp and serviceable tool into the hands of the teacher and student of the art of composition. Professor Scott, as well as yourselves, deserves the thanks of all who care for truth and force in working.

Spencer's Philosophy of Style and Wright's Essay on Style.

Edited by Professor FRED N. SCOTT. 12mo, 92 pages. Price, 45 cents.

THE plan has been followed of providing a biographical and critical introduction, an index, and a few notes, — the latter designed to provoke discussion or to furnish clews for further investigation.

Select Essays of Macaulay.

Edited by SAMUEL THURBER, of the Girls' High School, Boston. 12mo, cloth, 219 pages. Price, 70 cents.

THIS selection comprises the essays on Milton, Bunyan, John son, Goldsmith, and Madame D'Arblay, thus giving illustra tions both of Macaulay's earlier and of his later style.

The notes are intended to help the pupil to help himself. When an allusion is not easily understood, a note briefly explains it, or at least indicates where an explanation may be found. In other cases the pupil is expected to rely on his own efforts, and on such assistance as his teacher may think it wise to give.

Historical Essays of Macaulay.

Edited by SAMUEL THURBER. 12mo, cloth, 399 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THIS selection includes the essays on Lord Clive, Warren Hastings, and both the essays on the Earl of Chatham. The text in each case is given entire. A map of India, giving the location of places named in the essays, is included.

These essays are annotated on the same principle that is followed in the notes to the *Select Essays*.

Select Essays of Addison.

With Macaulay's Essay on Addison. Edited by SAMUEL THURBER. 12mo, cloth, 340 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE editor has aimed to bring together such papers from the *Spectator*, the *Tatler*, the *Guardian*, and the *Freeholder* as will prove most readable to youth of high school age, and at the same time give something like an adequate idea of the richness of Addison's vein. The *De Coverley Papers* are of course included.

William C. Collar, *Head Master, Latin School, Roxbury, Mass.:* I suppose the best thing I can say is that your book will go into our list of books to be read, and that it will have a permanent place in my school. I believe with all my heart in your principles of annotation, and think you are doing a great work for the schools.

The Drama: Its Law and its Technique.

By ELISABETH WOODBRIDGE, PH.D. 12mo, cloth, 198 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE object of this book is to present a manual for use in college courses on the drama, which shall stand the test of actual class-room use. It is successful in avoiding the principal defects of previous short treatises on the subject, which almost uniformly have been made up too completely of theories on the art, or, running to the other extreme, have occupied themselves too exclusively with practical stage-craft. This book in its two main divisions, as indicated by the title, contains at once the essential principles and absolute standards of the art, and its limitations by the practical necessities of presentation.

As is necessarily the case with all modern text-books on the drama, its broader foundations are laid in Freytag's *Technik des Dramas*. It is much more, however, than a mere condensation or adaptation of Freytag. The treatise follows Freytag's footsteps only in the broad ways where they are unavoidable by any one venturing on the ground at all. The discussion itself is an original treatment, on lines admirably adapted to give the student a real knowledge, and permanent appreciation, of all forms of the drama. The argument throughout is clear and logical, and the style smooth and forcible.

Public Speaking: A Treatise on Delivery with Selections for Declaiming.

By Professor EDWIN D. SHURTER, of the University of Texas. 12mo, cloth, 265 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THE aim of this book is to give students a good preparation for subsequent training in formal oratory, debate, or extemporary speaking. This it does in a thoroughly practical way, emphasizing the principles that underlie all oratory and illustrating them fully. It furnishes numerous selections for practice, — brief, fresh, and varied.

Orations and Arguments.

Edited by Professor C. B. BRADLEY, University of California. 12mo, cloth, 385 pages. Price, $1.00.

The following speeches are contained in the book: —

BURKE:
On Conciliation with the Colonies, and Speech before the Electors at Bristol.

CHATHAM:
On American Affairs.

ERSKINE:
In the Stockdale Case.

LINCOLN:
The Gettysburg Address.

WEBSTER:
The Reply to Hayne.

MACAULAY:
On the Reform Bill of 1832.

CALHOUN:
On the Slavery Question.

SEWARD:
On the Irrepressible Conflict.

IN making this selection, the test applied to each speech was that it should be in itself memorable, attaining its distinction through the essential qualities of nobility and force of ideas, and that it should be, in topic, so related to the great thoughts, memories, or problems of our own time as to have for us still an inherent and vital interest.

The speeches thus chosen have been printed from the best available texts, without change, save that the spelling has been made uniform throughout, and that three of the speeches — those of Webster, Calhoun, and Seward — have been shortened somewhat by the omission of matters of merely temporal or local interest. The omitted portions have been summarized for the reader, whenever they bear upon the main argument.

The Notes aim to furnish the reader with whatever help is necessary to the proper appreciation of the speeches; to avoid bewildering him with mere subtleties and display of erudition; and to encourage in him habits of self-help and familiarity with sources of information.

A special feature of this part of the work is a sketch of the English Constitution and Government, intended as a general introduction to the English speeches.

The collection includes material enough to permit of a varied selection for the use of successive classes in the schools.

From Milton to Tennyson.

Masterpieces of English Poetry. Edited by L. DU PONT SYLE. 12mo, cloth, 480 pages. Price, $1.00.

IN this work the editor has endeavored to bring together within the compass of a moderate-sized volume as much narrative, descriptive, and lyric verse as a student may reasonably be required to read critically for entrance to college. From the nineteen poets represented, only such masterpieces have been selected as are within the range of the understanding and the sympathy of the high school student. Each masterpiece is given complete, except for pedagogical reasons in the cases of Thomson, Cowper, Byron, and Browning. Exigencies of space have compelled the editor reluctantly to omit Scott from this volume. The copyright laws, of course, exclude American poets from the scope of this work.

The following poets are represented: —

MILTON, by the	L'Allegro, Il Penseroso, Lycidas, and a Selection from the Sonnets.
DRYDEN . .	Epistle to Congreve, Alexander's Feast, Character of a Good Parson.
POPE	Epistles to Mr. Jervas, to Lord Burlington, and to Augustus.
THOMSON . .	Winter.
JOHNSON . .	Vanity of Human Wishes.
GRAY	Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard, and The Bard.
GOLDSMITH .	Deserted Village.
COWPER . .	Winter Morning's Walk.
BURNS . . .	Cotter's Saturday Night, Tam O'Shanter, and a Selection from the Songs.
COLERIDGE .	Ancient Mariner.
BYRON . . .	Isles of Greece, and Selections from Childe Harold, Manfred, and the Hebrew Melodies.
KEATS . . .	Eve of St. Agnes, Ode to a Nightingale, Sonnet on Chapman's Homer.
SHELLEY . .	Euganean Hills, The Cloud, The Skylark, and the Two Sonnets on the Nile.
WORDSWORTH	Laodamia, The Highland Girl, Tintern Abbey, The Cuckoo, The Ode to a Skylark, The Milton Sonnet, The Ode to Duty, and the Ode on the Intimations of Immortality.
MACAULAY .	Horatius.
CLOUGH . . .	Two Ships, the Prologue to the Mari Magno, and the Lawyer's First Tale.
ARNOLD . .	The Scholar-Gypsy and the Forsaken Merman.
BROWNING .	Transcript from Euripides (Balaustion's Adventure).
TENNYSON .	Œnone, Morte D'Arthur, The Miller's Daughter, and a Selection from the Songs.

1955 Brook H.
Louisville
Ky.

page 41.

40 clom-ōret

34 cuman

56 cuman palat

57 ū gut.

37 cuman-ældē.

38 rīdan clif-long.

39 gefeaht, gefuhtan

63 gefeohtan-dif.

64 nam-nemman

72 noman

M.E.

ou replaced ū in O.E. mouth

original guttural in next

syllables changed to a.

short if palatal was very pal

mod. syl. de-riman

78

79

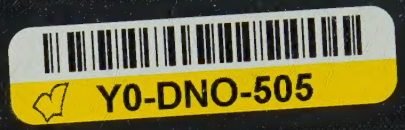
80

81

82

83

(84)


Y0-DNO-505